



Author-it XML Specifications



By Author-it Software Corporation Ltd.

Copyright 1996-2007 Author-it Software Corporation Ltd.
All rights reserved

Due to continued product development this information may change without notice. The information and intellectual property contained herein is confidential between Author-it Software Corporation Ltd. and the client and remains the exclusive property of Author-it Software Corporation Ltd. If you find any problems in the documentation, please report them to us in writing. Author-it Software Corporation Ltd does not warrant that this document is error-free.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise without the prior written permission of Author-it Software Corporation Ltd.

Author-it, Author-it Localization Manager, Author-it Project Manager, Author-it Website Manager, Author-it Experience Engine, Author-it Integration Server, Author-it Live, Author-it Publishing Server, and Author-it Contact Manager are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Author-it Software Corporation Ltd.

Microsoft Word, Microsoft Office, Microsoft Windows, Microsoft Windows 95™, Microsoft Windows 98™, Microsoft Windows NT, Microsoft Windows 2000™, and Microsoft Windows XP are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. LEGO is a registered trademark of the LEGO Group. Adobe, Acrobat, and FrameMaker are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

This document was created using **Author-it** (<http://www.author-it.com>).



Author-it Software Corporation

PO Box 300-273

Albany

Auckland

New Zealand

Telephone +64-9-915 5070

Fax +64-9-915 5071

feedback@author-it.com

<http://www.author-it.com>

Contents

Author-it XML Format	3
<hr/>	
Author-it Element	5
<hr/>	
Objects Element.....	6
Book Element	7
File Element.....	47
Glossary Element.....	103
Hyperlink Element.....	125
Index Element	157
IndexEntry Element.....	192
Macro Element.....	212
Media Element.....	230
Style Element	290
TableOfContents Element	394
TableOfFigures Element	423
TitlePage Element	442
Topic Element	462
Folders Element	538
Folder Element.....	539
ObjectSummarys Element	542
ObjectSummary Element	543
ReleaseStates Element	546
ReleaseState Element	547
Information Element.....	550
Description Element.....	551
Date Element.....	552
Library Element	552
TranslationJob Element.....	556
Index	559
<hr/>	

Author-it XML Format

This document describes the XML format used by Author-it. The XML file can be used for the purposes of translation, or transferring information between libraries.

The Author-it XML file contains a number of Author-it objects, along with related information. The content of each XML file will vary depending on the number and types of object included.

Within Author-it there are 13 different object types. Each of these object types has a corresponding XML structure. The XML for each object type is described in this document.

The Author-it XML File

All selected objects will be exported to a single XML file with the ".xml" extension. The XML file will have an Author-it root element, and may contain five child elements: Objects, ObjectSummaries, Folders, Release States, and Information. The contents of these major elements are described below.

The Author-it XML Schema File

If an XML schema file is included, it will have the ".xsd" extension. This file can be used with an XML parser to validate the contents of an XML file to check for structural correctness, and semantic correctness (i.e. to check that the values of each element are valid).

Author-it Element

Description

The Author-it element is the root element of the Author-it XML document.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Values</u>
version	No	Integer	>= 0

Parent Element

None

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
Objects	No
ObjectSummarys	Yes
Folders	Yes
Release States	Yes
Information	Yes

Sample XML

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-16" ?>
<AuthorIT version="4.1" xmlns="http://www.authorit.com/xml/authorit"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
+ <Objects>
+ <ObjectSummarys>
+ <Folders>
  <ReleaseStates />
+ <Information>
</AuthorIT>
```

Objects Element

Description

The Objects element is one of the major structural elements. It can contain one or more elements representing each Author-it object. For example if a topic and a file object are included in the xml file, then the Objects element will contain a Topic element and a File element. There are thirteen Author-it objects, and each one has a corresponding xml element. Each object element contains all the properties for that object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Author-it

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
Book	Yes	Zero to many
File	Yes	Zero to many
Glossary	Yes	Zero to many
Hyperlink	Yes	Zero to many
Index	Yes	Zero to many
IndexEntry	Yes	Zero to many
Macro	Yes	Zero to many
Media	Yes	Zero to many
Style	Yes	Zero to many
TableOfContents	Yes	Zero to many
TableOfFigures	Yes	Zero to many
TitlePage	Yes	Zero to many
Topic	Yes	Zero to many

Sample XML

```
<Objects>  
+ <Book>  
+ <File>  
+ <Topic>  
</Objects>
```

Book Element

Description



The Book element represents an Author-it Book object, and contains all of its properties.

The Book object represents the content and structure of a document. Objects can be dragged and dropped into a hierarchical outline list to form the content of the document and rearranged to form the desired structure.

Books can also be used inside other books. For example, a book containing a sub-set of regularly used objects can be included in the master book. This way you only need to add the sub-book, and avoid having to duplicate relationships for each of the objects individually.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Values</u>
wordcount	Yes	Integer	>= 0

Parent Element

Objects

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
Object	No
ContentsNodes	Yes
VariableAssignments	Yes
PrintByLine	Yes
PrintTitle	Yes
PrintSubTitle	Yes
PrintSuperTitle	Yes
PrintVersion	Yes
PrintWordTemplate	Yes
HelpAltPrefix	Yes
HelpCitation	Yes
HelpCompression	Yes
HelpCopyright	Yes
HelpFileName	Yes
HelpIncludeFile	Yes
HelpMacro	Yes

Element	Optional
HelpTitle	Yes
HelpTopicOffset	Yes
WebAdditionalFiles	Yes
WebBaseFontSize	Yes
WebBaseURL	Yes
WebByLine	Yes
WebFramesetTemplate	Yes
WebSuperTitle	Yes
WebTitle	Yes
WebVersion	Yes

Sample XML

```

- <Book>
+ <Object>
+ <ContentsNodes>
  <VariableAssignments />
  <PrintByLine />
  <PrintTitle>Using Notepad</PrintTitle>
  <PrintSubTitle />
  <PrintSuperTitle inherited="true">User's Guide</PrintSuperTitle>
  <PrintVersion>Version 5.0</PrintVersion>
  <PrintWordTemplate inherited="true">..\Templates\Word
Templates\AuthorIT.dot</PrintWordTemplate>
  <HelpAltPrefix />
  <HelpCitation />
  <HelpCompression inherited="true">1</HelpCompression>
  <HelpCopyright />
  <HelpFileName>notepad</HelpFileName>
  <HelpIncludeFile />
  <HelpMacro inherited="true">0</HelpMacro>
  <HelpTitle>Using Notepad</HelpTitle>
  <HelpTopicOffset inherited="true">0</HelpTopicOffset>
+ <WebAdditionalFiles inherited="true">
  <WebBaseFontSize inherited="true">12</WebBaseFontSize>
  <WebBaseURL />
  <WebByLine />
  <WebFramesetTemplate inherited="true">..\Templates\Plain
HTML\html_frameset.htm</WebFramesetTemplate>
  <WebSuperTitle inherited="true">User's Guide</WebSuperTitle>
  <WebTitle>Using Notepad</WebTitle>
  <WebVersion />
</Book>

```

Object Element

Description

The Object element is used by all Author-it object types, and contains the properties that are common to all objects. In Author-it these properties can be found on the General tab of each object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Book, File, Glossary, Hyperlink, Index, IndexEntry, Macro, Media, Style, TableOfContents, TableOfFigures, TitlePage, Topic

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
BasedOn	Yes	Once
CreatedBy	Yes	Once
CreatedDate	Yes	Once
Description	No	Once
FolderID	Yes	Once
GUID	No	Once
ID	No	Once
IncludelnHelp	Yes	Once
IncludelnPrint	Yes	Once
IncludelnWeb	Yes	Once
IsTemplate	Yes	Once
Key	Yes	Once
LocalizationID	Yes	Once
ModifiedBy	Yes	Once
ModifiedDate	Yes	Once
ReleaseStateID	Yes	Once
Status	Yes	Once
Type	Yes	Once
Version	Yes	Once

Sample XML

```
<Object>
  <BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
  <CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
  <CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
  <Description>Using Notepad</Description>
  <FolderID>3</FolderID>
  <GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
  <ID>164</ID>
  <IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
  <IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
  <IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
  <IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
  <Key>164</Key>
  <LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
  <ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
  <ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
  <ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
  <Status>1</Status>
  <Type>Book</Type>
  <Version>1</Version>
</Object>
```

BasedOn Element

Description

Allows you to choose the template on which the object will be based. The names that appear in this list are derived from the Description property of an object template. The object templates that appear may depend on your security access.

The BasedOn element corresponds to the "Base this object on and inherit properties from template" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (A valid template object ID)

Sample XML

```
<BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
```

CreatedBy Element

Description

The CreatedBy element contains the user name of the person who created the object. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	1 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
```

CreateDate Element

Description

The CreateDate element contains the date that the object was created. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<CreateDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreateDate>
```

Description Element

Description

Defines a descriptive name for the object. This description will be displayed as the name of the object throughout Author-it.

Note: You should enter a description that will make your objects easy to identify and find. In some object types, the description is copied to other properties when you first create the object. For example, in the Topic object the text is copied to the Print Heading, Help Heading, and the Web Heading properties.

The Description element corresponds to the "Description" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Description>Using Notepad</Description>
```

FolderID Element

Description

The FolderID element corresponds to the ID of the folder that the object is located in.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1 (A valid folder ID)

Sample XML

```
<FolderID>3</FolderID>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains a globally unique identifier.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
```

ID Element

Description

The ID element contains the object ID. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<ID>164</ID>
```

IncludeInHelp Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInHelp element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Windows Help" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
```

IncludeInPrint Element**Description**

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInPrint element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Word Document" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
```

IncludeInWeb Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInWeb element corresponds to the "(Include object in) HTML" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
```

IsTemplate Element

Description

Determines if this object is an object template. If you check this property, the object becomes a template.

Note: You can only set this property when the object is first created, and if you have the required security access.

The IsTemplate element corresponds to the "Make this object an object template" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
```

Key Element

Description

Unique identifier for the object, which you cannot change. This number can be used for linking topics when you're producing context-sensitive Help. The number does not change if you create versions of the object.

The Key element corresponds to the "Object code" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Key>164</Key>
```

LocalizationID Element

Description

The LocalizationID element is used with localization libraries to define which localization an object belongs to (e.g. what language the object is in).

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
```

ModifiedBy Element

Description

The ModifiedBy element contains the user name of the user who last updated the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
```

ModifiedDate Element

Description

The ModifiedDate element contains the date and time the the object was last updated. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
```

ReleaseStateID Element

Description

The ReleaseStateID element contains the ID of the release state of the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
```

Status Element

Description

A read-only text property that contains the current status of the version of the object. A version of an object can move through several different states during its life cycle.

This field is shown in the "Object status" field, on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 2, where: 0=Inactive 1=Active 2=Redundant

Sample XML

```
<Status>1</Status>
```

Type Element

Description

The Type element contains the object type of the object. This field contains a string which represents which type of object this is.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Type>Book</Type>
```

Version Element

Description

Contains a read-only unique version number for each version of an object. The Object Code will not change from one version of an object to another.

This field is displayed in the "Object version" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Version>1</Version>
```

ContentsNodes Element

Description

This is a hierarchical outline list used to built the content and structure of your book. You can include Title Page, Table of Contents, Table of Figures, File, Topic, Glossary, and Index objects.

The ContentsNodes element is used to represent the contents of the Book object. It is shown in Author-it as a tree structure. This element contains a node hierarchy which outlines the relationships between the child elements.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Book

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
Node	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<ContentsNodes>
  <Node id="105" />
  <Node id="109" />
  <Node id="182">
    <ChildNodes>
      <Node id="110" />
    </ChildNodes>
  </Node>
  <Node id="165">
    <ChildNodes>
      <Node id="167" />
      <Node id="169" />
    </ChildNodes>
  </Node>
  <Node id="180" />
  <Node id="113" />
</ContentsNodes>
```

Node Element

Description

The Node element is used to represent an item which appears in a node hierarchy. The hierarchy is recursive, so a node can contain other nodes as children. If the node is a parent of other nodes it will contain a ChildNodes element.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type	Range
id	No	Integer	>= 1 (an object ID)

Parent Element

ContentsNodes, IndexNodes, ChildNode

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
ChildNodes	Yes	Zero or one times

Sample XML

```
<Node id="105" />
<Node id="109" />
<Node id="182">
  <ChildNodes>
    <Node id="110">
      <ChildNodes>
        <Node id="167" />
        <Node id="169" />
      </ChildNodes>
    </Node>
  </ChildNodes>
</Node>
<Node id="180" />
<Node id="113" />
```

ChildNodes Element

Description

The ChildNodes element contains a number of nodes that are children of another node element.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Node

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
Node	No	One to many times

Sample XML

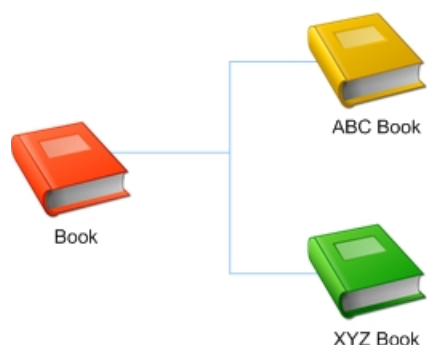
```
<Node id="105" />
<Node id="109" />
<Node id="182">
  <ChildNodes>
    <Node id="110">
      <ChildNodes>
        <Node id="167" />
        <Node id="169" />
      </ChildNodes>
    </Node>
  </ChildNodes>
</Node>
<Node id="180" />
<Node id="113" />
```

VariableAssignments Element

Description

The VariableAssignments element contains all variable assignments for the parent object.

Variables act as "placeholders" in your Topics that can be filled with changeable data. Say for example, you need to produce a document for your many different clients. You can save time by producing one document, and then changing the Variables (company name, logo, and so on...) to make personalized versions of the document.



Variables are used in Topics. Their names appear between <angle brackets>. The value of a Variable is only displayed when the final output is published.

You can view a full list of the variables available in the library from the Author-it Button menu, or view variables that are used by objects from ribbon options in the main window or Editor.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Book, Topic

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
VariableAssignment	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<VariableAssignments>
- <VariableAssignment>
  <ID>17</ID>
  <Name></Name>
  <Value>MyCompany Ltd</Value>
  <ValueObject>0</ValueObject>
  <Style>-1</Style>
</VariableAssignment>
</VariableAssignments>
```

VariableAssignment Element

Description

The VariableAssignment element is part of the VariableAssignments structure.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

VariableAssignments

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
ID	No	Once
Name	No	Once
Value	No	Once
ValueObject	No	Once
Style	No	Once

Sample XML

```
<VariableAssignment>  
  <ID>17</ID>  
  <Name></Name>  
  <Value>MyCompany Ltd</Value>  
  <ValueObject>0</ValueObject>  
  <Style>-1</Style>  
</VariableAssignment>
```

ID Element

Description

The ID element contains the ID of the variable that has been assigned to the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

VariableAssignment

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>=1, a variable id

Sample XML

```
<ID>17</ID>
```

Name Element

Description

The Name element contains the name of the variable that has been assigned to the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

VariableAssignment

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Name></Name>
```

Value Element

Description

The Value element contains the value of the variable that has been assigned to the object. If the variable contains a file object then this element will contain the file object description.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

VariableAssignment

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 4000 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Value>MyCompany Ltd</Value>
```

ValueObject Element

Description

The ValueObject element contains the ID of the file object of the variable that has been assigned to the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

VariableAssignment

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>=0, a file object id

Sample XML

```
<ValueObject>231</ValueObject>
```

Style Element

Description

The Style element contains the style of the Style of the variable that has been assigned to the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

VariableAssignment

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	>= -1, where -1 = inherited, otherwise an object id

Sample XML

```
<Style>-1</Style>
```

PrintByLine Element

Description

The author's name or "By Line" of the Book that appears in your Printed output. In the published Word document, this value is stored in the Author field of the document's Properties window, and is used in the Title Page.

The PrintByLine element corresponds to the "By Line" field on the Document tab of the Book object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters

Sample XML

```
<PrintByLine inherited="true">J.H. Jones</PrintByLine>
```

PrintTitle Element**Description**

Title of the Book that appears in your Printed output. In the published Word document, this value is stored in the Title field of the document's Properties window, and is used in the Title Page and in headers throughout the document.

The PrintTitle element corresponds to the Title field on the Document tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters

Sample XML

```
<PrintTitle>Using Notepad</PrintTitle>
```

PrintSubTitle Element

Description

Sub Title of the Book that appears in your Printed output.

The PrintSubTitle element corresponds to the Sub Title field on the Document tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters

Sample XML

```
<PrintSubTitle>A beginner's guide</PrintSubTitle>
```

PrintSuperTitle Element

Description

Super Title of the Book that appears in your Printed output. In the published Word document, this value is stored in the Subject field of the document's Properties window, and is used in the Title Page.

The PrintSuperTitle element corresponds to the Super Title field on the Document tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters

Sample XML

```
<PrintSuperTitle inherited="true">User's Guide</PrintSuperTitle>
```

PrintVersion Element**Description**

Version of the Book that appears in your Printed output. In the published Word document, this value is stored in the Keywords field of the document's Properties window, and is used in the Title Page

Note: This is not the same as the Object Version. The Document Version is just text that appears in your document. It does not identify the Book object, and it is not related to the Object Version in any way.

The PrintVersion element corresponds to the Version field on the Document tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters

Sample XML

```
<PrintVersion>Version 5.0</PrintVersion>
```

PrintWordTemplate Element

Description

Tells Author-it which Word template to use when publishing your Printed output. This publishing template contains the Styles that control text formatting and the Autotext Entries that hold the headers and footers of your document. If any required Styles or Autotext Entries are missing from this template, you'll get errors when publishing.

The PrintWordTemplate element corresponds to the Word Template field on the Document tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 4000 characters

Sample XML

```
<PrintWordTemplate inherited="true">..\Templates\Word  
Templates\AuthorIT.dot</PrintWordTemplate>
```

HelpAltPrefix Element

Description

Defines prefixes other than IDH_ for mapped topic IDs. A prefix other than IDH_ generates errors as you compile your help file — unless you specify that prefix here.

The HelpAltPrefix element corresponds to the "Instead of IDH_, check these prefixes" field on the Linking sub tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters

Sample XML

```
<HelpAltPrefix >XY_</HelpAltPrefix>
```

HelpCitation Element**Description**

Defines a citation that is appended to any text a user prints or cuts out of your Help system. Can contain up to a maximum of 2000 characters.

The HelpCitation element corresponds to the "If users paste or print Help text, display:" field on the Copyright Information sub tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 4000 characters

Sample XML

```
<HelpCitation>Original material from MyDocument. Copyright MyCompany</HelpCitation>
```

HelpCompression Element

Description

Allows you to select the type of compression used to compress the published Windows Help file.

The HelpCompression element corresponds to the Compression field on the Windows Help tab of the Book object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 = (none) 1 = Maximum (recommended) 2 = Phrase on text 4 = Hall on text 8 = Zeck on text 16 = RLE on bitmaps 32 = Zeck on bitmaps

Sample XML

```
<HelpCompression inherited="true">1</HelpCompression>
```

HelpCopyright Element

Description

Defines the copyright information that is displayed when the user selects **About** from the **Help** menu of Windows Help. Can contain up to a maximum of 255 characters.

The HelpCopyright element corresponds to the "Display this text in the version dialog box" field on the Copyright Information sub tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Book object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters

Sample XML

```
<HelpCopyright>Copyright 2004 MyCompanyName. All rights reserved</HelpCitation>
```

HelpFileName Element**Description**

Defines the file name used to save both the main help file (.hlp) and the contents file (.cnt). Do not put an extension in this file name, or it will simply be removed.

The HelpFileName corresponds to the "File name" field on the Windows Help tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters

Sample XML

```
<HelpFileName>notepad</HelpFileName>
```

HelpIncludeFile Element

Description

Defines the name and location of an ASCII text file that contains a list of items. Depending on the circumstances, the file can include mapped topic IDs. Including an ASCII text file provides an alternative to adding these items individually. If you do not know the name or location of the file you want to include, click the [...] button.

The HelpIncludeFile element corresponds to the "Instead of context mapping use this Include file (*.hm)" field on the Linking sub tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters

Sample XML

```
<HelpIncludeFile>C:\WinHelp\extra.hm</HelpIncludeFile>
```

HelpMacro Element

Description

Sets a relationship to a Macro Procedure object that defines the Windows Help Macros that will be executed each time the published Help system is started.

The HelpMacro element corresponds to the Macro field on the Windows Help tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	Zero, or the ObjectID of a Macro object

Sample XML

```
<HelpMacro inherited="true">0</HelpMacro>
```

HelpTitle Element**Description**

Defines the Title that will appear on the title bar of Windows Help.

The HelpTitle element corresponds to the Title field on the Windows Help tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 127 characters long

Sample XML

```
<HelpTitle>Using Notepad</HelpTitle>
```

WebAdditionalFiles Element

Description

Specifies a list of additional files required to support the HTML or HTML Help. These can be any files required that Author-it does not know about. For example, you may have a graphic specified in the Frameset template, or you may require a supporting Java applet. Author-it will copy all files specified to the Publishing folder for this Book when publishing any HTML based output.

The WebAdditionalFiles element corresponds to the "Specify any additional file required" field on the HTML tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
AdditionalFile	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<WebAdditionalFiles inherited="true">
  <AdditionalFile>
    <Filename>..\Templates\Plain HTML\contents1.gif</Filename>
  </AdditionalFile>
</WebAdditionalFiles>
```

AdditionalFile Element

Description

The AdditionalFile element is part of the WebAdditionalFiles structure.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

WebAdditionalFiles

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
Filename	No	Once

Sample XML

```
<WebAdditionalFiles inherited="true">
  <AdditionalFile>
    <Filename>..\Templates\Plain HTML\contents1.gif</Filename>
  </AdditionalFile>
</WebAdditionalFiles>
```

Filename Element

Description

The Filename element is part of the WebAdditionalFiles structure. This element contains a filename, including the file path. The filename may be relative or absolute, local or network.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

AdditionalFile

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 4000 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebAdditionalFiles inherited="true">
  <AdditionalFile>
    <Filename>..\Templates\Plain HTML\contents1.gif</Filename>
  </AdditionalFile>
</WebAdditionalFiles>
```

WebBaseFontSize Element

Description

Defines the base font size for the HTML pages. All other relative font sizes will be relative to this base size.

The WebBaseFontSize element corresponds to the "Base font size" field on the HTML tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	4 to 72 (points)

Sample XML

```
<WebBaseFontSize inherited="true">12</WebBaseFontSize>
```

WebBaseURL Element**Description**

Defines the URL that all links throughout the published document will be relative to. This means that you can move the published HTML pages around and all links will still work.

The WebBaseURL element corresponds to the "Base URL" field on the HTML tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 4000 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebBaseURL>http://www.mycompany.com</WebBaseURL>
```

WebByLine Element

Description

Defines a By Line for the Book in the HTML pages. This information is placed into the HTML page as Meta data.

The WebByLine element corresponds to the "By line" field on the HTML tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebByLine inherited="true">J.H. Jones</WebByLine>
```

WebFramesetTemplate Element

Description

Specifies the HTML file to be used as the frameset when using an HTML Help or Plain HTML based Table of Contents and Index. Sample frameset files can be found in the Templates folders.

The WebFramesetTemplate element corresponds to the "Frameset template" field on the HTML tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 4000 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebFramesetTemplate inherited="true">..\Templates\PlainHTML\html_frameset.htm</WebFramesetTemplate>
```

WebSuperTitle Element**Description**

Defines a Super Title for the Book in the HTML pages. This information is placed into the HTML page as Meta data.

The WebSuperTitle element corresponds to the "Super title" field on the HTML tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebSuperTitle inherited="true">User's Guide</WebSuperTitle>
```

WebTitle Element

Description

Defines the Title of the Book in the HTML pages. This information is placed into the HTML page as the <TITLE> tag.

The WebTitle element corresponds to the "Title" field on the HTML tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebTitle>Using Notepad</WebTitle>
```

WebVersion Element

Description

Defines a Version for the Book in the HTML pages. This information is placed into the HTML page as Meta data.

Note: This is not the same as Object Version. This version is simply text for you and your readers' benefit. It is not used in any way to identify the Book object, nor is it linked to the Object Version in any way.

The WebVersion element corresponds to the "Version" field on the HTML tab of the Book object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Book

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebVersion>3.2</WebVersion>
```

File Element

Description

The File element represents an Author-it File object, and contains all of its properties.



The File object is used to link or embed any pictures, OLE objects, or files created and maintained by a separate application. It also defines how they are formatted in the printed and on-line documents.

You can define aspects such as size, captions, borders, etc. When published the file is read from disk or from the Author-it Library, inserted and formatted as specified.

Note: You can insert a File object directly into the text of a Topic, or it can be in the contents of a Book. When in the contents of a Book it is included in the Topic immediately preceding the File object in the contents.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Values</u>
wordcount	Yes	Integer	>= 0

Parent Element

Objects

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
Object	No
EmbeddedPicture	Yes
EmbeddedPictureExt	Yes
HyperLink	Yes
PrintBorderBottom	Yes

Element	Optional
PrintBorderLeft	Yes
PrintBorderRight	Yes
PrintBorderTop	Yes
PrintCaptionPosition	Yes
PrintCaptionLabel	Yes
PrintCaptionTitle	Yes
PrintFilename	Yes
PrintFolder	Yes
PrintOutputFormat	Yes
PrintParagraphStyle	Yes
PrintScaleHeight	Yes
PrintScaleWidth	Yes
PrintSizeHeight	Yes
PrintSizeWidth	Yes
PrintSizingMethod	Yes
PrintSourceType	Yes
HelpBitmapAlignment	Yes
HelpBitmapTransparency	Yes
HelpFileName	Yes
HelpFolder	Yes
HelpOutputFormat	Yes
HelpParagraphStyle	Yes
HelpScaleHeight	Yes
HelpScaleWidth	Yes
HelpSizeHeight	Yes
HelpSizeWidth	Yes
HelpSizingMethod	Yes
HelpSourceType	Yes
HelpVideoPlay	Yes
HelpVideoRepeat	Yes
HelpVideoShowMenuButton	Yes
HelpVideoShowPlaybar	Yes
WebAdditionalFiles	Yes
WebAlignment	Yes
WebAltText	Yes

Element	Optional
WebBorder	Yes
WebFileName	Yes
WebFolder	Yes
WebHorizontalSpace	Yes
WebImageMap	Yes
WebOutputFormat	Yes
WebSizeHeight	Yes
WebSizeWidth	Yes
WebSourceType	Yes
WebSpaceVertical	Yes
WebVerticalSpace	Yes
WebVideoRepeat	Yes
WebVideoRepeatTimes	Yes
WebVideoShowControls	Yes
WebVideoStart	Yes

Sample XML

```

<File>
+ <Object />
<EmbeddedPicture>UESDBAoAAAAIAFgSPTDTy1DHJxcAAOy5AAAHAAAAU3RyZWftMe2ayW
4bSRBEU5YN0xRNsk2I</EmbeddedPicture>
  <EmbeddedPictureExt>wmf</EmbeddedPictureExt>
  <HyperLink inherited="true">0</HyperLink>
  <PrintBorderBottom inherited="true">0</PrintBorderBottom>
  <PrintBorderLeft inherited="true">0</PrintBorderLeft>
  <PrintBorderRight inherited="true">0</PrintBorderRight>
  <PrintBorderTop inherited="true">0</PrintBorderTop>

  <PrintCaptionPosition inherited="true">1</PrintCaptionPosition>
  <PrintCaptionLabel inherited="true">2</PrintCaptionLabel>
  <PrintCaptionTitle />
  <PrintFilename />
  <PrintFolder inherited="true" />
  <PrintOutputFormat inherited="true">1</PrintOutputFormat>
  <PrintParagraphStyle inherited="true">0</PrintParagraphStyle>
  <PrintScaleHeight inherited="true">100</PrintScaleHeight>
  <PrintScaleWidth inherited="true">100</PrintScaleWidth>
  <PrintSizeHeight inherited="true">1</PrintSizeHeight>
  <PrintSizeWidth inherited="true">1</PrintSizeWidth>
  <PrintSizingMethod inherited="true">1</PrintSizingMethod>
  <PrintSourceType inherited="true">3</PrintSourceType>
  <HelpBitmapAlignment inherited="true">1</HelpBitmapAlignment>
  <HelpBitmapTransparency
inherited="true">false</HelpBitmapTransparency>
  <HelpFileName />
  <HelpFolder inherited="true" />
  <HelpOutputFormat>0</HelpOutputFormat>
  <HelpParagraphStyle inherited="true">0</HelpParagraphStyle>
  <HelpScaleHeight inherited="true">100</HelpScaleHeight>
  <HelpScaleWidth inherited="true">100</HelpScaleWidth>
  <HelpSizeHeight inherited="true">1</HelpSizeHeight>
  <HelpSizeWidth inherited="true">1</HelpSizeWidth>
  <HelpSizingMethod inherited="true">1</HelpSizingMethod>
  <HelpSourceType inherited="true">4</HelpSourceType>
  <HelpVideoPlay inherited="true">false</HelpVideoPlay>
  <HelpVideoRepeat inherited="true">false</HelpVideoRepeat>
  <HelpVideoShowMenuButton
inherited="true">false</HelpVideoShowMenuButton>
  <HelpVideoShowPlaybar inherited="true">false</HelpVideoShowPlaybar>
  <WebAdditionalFiles />
  <WebAlignment inherited="true">Bottom</WebAlignment>
  <WebAltText />
  <WebBorder inherited="true">0 px</WebBorder>
  <WebFileName />
  <WebFolder inherited="true" />
  <WebHorizontalSpace inherited="true">0 px</WebHorizontalSpace>
  <WebImageMap />
  <WebOutputFormat>0</WebOutputFormat>
  <WebSizeHeight inherited="true">100 %</WebSizeHeight>
  <WebSizeWidth inherited="true">100 %</WebSizeWidth>
  <WebSourceType inherited="true">5</WebSourceType>
  <WebSpaceVertical inherited="true">0 px</WebSpaceVertical>
  <WebVerticalSpace inherited="true">0 px</WebVerticalSpace>
  <WebVideoRepeat inherited="true">1</WebVideoRepeat>
  <WebVideoRepeatTimes inherited="true">1</WebVideoRepeatTimes>
  <WebVideoShowControls inherited="true">false</WebVideoShowControls>
  <WebVideoStart inherited="true">0</WebVideoStart>
</File>

```

Object Element

Description

The Object element is used by all Author-it object types, and contains the properties that are common to all objects. In Author-it these properties can be found on the General tab of each object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Book, File, Glossary, Hyperlink, Index, IndexEntry, Macro, Media, Style, TableOfContents, TableOfFigures, TitlePage, Topic

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
BasedOn	Yes	Once
CreatedBy	Yes	Once
CreatedDate	Yes	Once
Description	No	Once
FolderID	Yes	Once
GUID	No	Once
ID	No	Once
IncludelnHelp	Yes	Once
IncludelnPrint	Yes	Once
IncludelnWeb	Yes	Once
IsTemplate	Yes	Once
Key	Yes	Once
LocalizationID	Yes	Once
ModifiedBy	Yes	Once
ModifiedDate	Yes	Once
ReleaseStateID	Yes	Once
Status	Yes	Once
Type	Yes	Once
Version	Yes	Once

Sample XML

```
<Object>
  <BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
  <CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
  <CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
  <Description>Using Notepad</Description>
  <FolderID>3</FolderID>
  <GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
  <ID>164</ID>
  <IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
  <IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
  <IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
  <IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
  <Key>164</Key>
  <LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
  <ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
  <ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
  <ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
  <Status>1</Status>
  <Type>Book</Type>
  <Version>1</Version>
</Object>
```

BasedOn Element

Description

Allows you to choose the template on which the object will be based. The names that appear in this list are derived from the Description property of an object template. The object templates that appear may depend on your security access.

The BasedOn element corresponds to the "Base this object on and inherit properties from template" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (A valid template object ID)

Sample XML

```
<BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
```

CreatedBy Element

Description

The CreatedBy element contains the user name of the person who created the object. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	1 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
```

CreatedDate Element

Description

The CreatedDate element contains the date that the object was created. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
```

Description Element

Description

Defines a descriptive name for the object. This description will be displayed as the name of the object throughout Author-it.

Note: You should enter a description that will make your objects easy to identify and find. In some object types, the description is copied to other properties when you first create the object. For example, in the Topic object the text is copied to the Print Heading, Help Heading, and the Web Heading properties.

The Description element corresponds to the "Description" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Description>Using Notepad</Description>
```

FolderID Element

Description

The FolderID element corresponds to the ID of the folder that the object is located in.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	≥ 1 (A valid folder ID)

Sample XML

```
<FolderID>3</FolderID>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains a globally unique identifier.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
```

ID Element

Description

The ID element contains the object ID. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<ID>164</ID>
```

IncludeInHelp Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInHelp element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Windows Help" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
```

IncludeInPrint Element**Description**

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInPrint element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Word Document" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
```

IncludeInWeb Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInWeb element corresponds to the "(Include object in) HTML" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
```

IsTemplate Element

Description

Determines if this object is an object template. If you check this property, the object becomes a template.

Note: You can only set this property when the object is first created, and if you have the required security access.

The IsTemplate element corresponds to the "Make this object an object template" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IsTemplate>false</IsTemplate>
```

Key Element

Description

Unique identifier for the object, which you cannot change. This number can be used for linking topics when you're producing context-sensitive Help. The number does not change if you create versions of the object.

The Key element corresponds to the "Object code" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Key>164</Key>
```

LocalizationID Element

Description

The LocalizationID element is used with localization libraries to define which localization an object belongs to (e.g. what language the object is in).

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
```

ModifiedBy Element

Description

The ModifiedBy element contains the user name of the user who last updated the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
```

ModifiedDate Element

Description

The ModifiedDate element contains the date and time the the object was last updated. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
```

ReleaseStateID Element

Description

The ReleaseStateID element contains the ID of the release state of the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
```

Status Element

Description

A read-only text property that contains the current status of the version of the object. A version of an object can move through several different states during its life cycle.

This field is shown in the "Object status" field, on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 2, where: 0=Inactive 1=Active 2=Redundant

Sample XML

```
<Status>1</Status>
```

Type Element

Description

The Type element contains the object type of the object. This field contains a string which represents which type of object this is.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Type>Book</Type>
```

Version Element

Description

Contains a read-only unique version number for each version of an object. The Object Code will not change from one version of an object to another.

This field is displayed in the "Object version" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Version>1</Version>
```

EmbeddedPicture Element

Description

The EmbeddedPicture element contains the binary data of an embedded picture. The data is zipped and then base64 encoded.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Base64Binary (A-Z,a-z,0-9,+/,=)	

Sample XML

```
<EmbeddedPicture>UESDBAoAAAAIAFgSPtDTy1DHJxcAAOy5AAAHAAAAU3RyZWftMe2ayW4bSRBEU5YN0xRNsk2I</EmbeddedPicture>
```

EmbeddedPictureExt Element

Description

The EmbeddedPictureExt element contains a file extension relating to the source type of the embedded picture.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 10 characters

Sample XML

```
<EmbeddedPictureExt>wmf</EmbeddedPictureExt>
```

HyperLink Element

Description

Sets a relationship to a Hypertext Link object that defines the hyperlink that will be applied to the image of Windows Help, HTML or HTML based Help for this file. Unlike coded HTML or WinHelp RTF, the graphic or image does not simply act as the anchor for a hyperlink which is just part of the text. It is a separate relationship to the File object itself. If the File object is reused, the link also applies to each instance. Likewise, if the hyperlink in the File object is changed, it will apply automatically to all instances of the File object.

Note: This property applies to both Windows Help and HTML. Changes to one will also affect the other.

The Hyperlink element corresponds to the "Hyperlink" field on the Windows Help and HTML tabs of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0. A hyperlink object ID.

Sample XML

```
<HyperLink inherited="true">0</HyperLink>
```

PrintBorderBottom Element

Description

Allows you to choose a border type for each of the Top, Bottom, Left, and Right sides of the Picture, or OLE object file, in the Word document.

The PrintBorderBottom element corresponds to the "Bottom" field on the Borders sub-tab of the Document tab of the File object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 11, where: 0 = (none) 1 = ¼ pt solid 2 = ½ pt solid 3 = ¾ pt solid 4 = 1 pt solid 5 = 1 ½ pt solid 6 = 2 pt solid 7 = ¼ pt double 8 = ½ pt double 9 = ¾ pt double 10 = ¼ pt dotted 11 = ¼ pt dashed

Sample XML

```
<PrintBorderBottom inherited="true">0</PrintBorderBottom>
```

PrintBorderLeft Element

Description

Allows you to choose a border type for each of the Top, Bottom, Left, and Right sides of the Picture, or OLE object file, in the Word document.

The PrintBorderLeft element corresponds to the "Left" field on the Borders sub-tab of the Document tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 11, where: 0 = (none) 1 = ¼ pt solid 2 = ½ pt solid 3 = ¾ pt solid 4 = 1 pt solid 5 = 1 ½ pt solid 6 = 2 pt solid 7 = ¼ pt double 8 = ½ pt double 9 = ¾ pt double 10 = ¼ pt dotted 11 = ¼ pt dashed

Sample XML

```
<PrintBorderLeft inherited="true">0</PrintBorderLeft>
```

PrintBorderRight Element

Description

Allows you to choose a border type for each of the Top, Bottom, Left, and Right sides of the Picture, or OLE object file, in the Word document.

The PrintBorderRight element corresponds to the "Bottom" field on the Borders sub-tab of the Document tab of the File object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 11, where: 0 = (none) 1 = ¼ pt solid 2 = ½ pt solid 3 = ¾ pt solid 4 = 1 pt solid 5 = 1 ½ pt solid 6 = 2 pt solid 7 = ¼ pt double 8 = ½ pt double 9 = ¾ pt double 10 = ¼ pt dotted 11 = ¼ pt dashed

Sample XML

```
<PrintBorderRight inherited="true">0</PrintBorderRight>
```

PrintBorderTop Element

Description

Allows you to choose a border type for each of the Top, Bottom, Left, and Right sides of the Picture, or OLE object file, in the Word document.

This element contains an integer representing the thickness and style of the border.

The PrintBorderTop element corresponds to the "Top" field on the Borders sub-tab of the Document tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 11, where: 0 = (none) 1 = ¼ pt solid 2 = ½ pt solid 3 = ¾ pt solid 4 = 1 pt solid 5 = 1½ pt solid 6 = 2 pt solid 7 = ¼ pt double 8 = ½ pt double 9 = ¾ pt double 10 = ¼ pt dotted 11 = ¼ pt dashed

Sample XML

```
<PrintBorderTop inherited="true">0</PrintBorderTop>
```

PrintCaptionLabel Element

Description

Allows you to choose the type of label that will prefix the caption. Captions are automatically numbered starting at 1 from the beginning of the document for each type.

The PrintCaptionLabel element contains a string of text that will be printed next to the image.

The PrintCaptionLabel element corresponds to the "Caption" field on the Caption sub-tab, on the Document tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<PrintCaptionTitle>Workflow Procedure</PrintCaptionTitle>
```

PrintCaptionPosition Element

Description

Allows you to choose where the caption is positioned relative to the file in the Word document - above or below.

The PrintCaptionPosition element contains an integer which represents the caption position in the Word document.

The PrintCaptionPosition element corresponds to the "Position" field on the Caption sub-tab, on the Document tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0, 1 - where: 0 = Above file 1 = Below file

Sample XML

```
<PrintCaptionPosition inherited="true">1</PrintCaptionPosition>
```

PrintCaptionTitle Element

Description

Defines a caption for the file in the Word document.

Note: This caption will only be added if the File object is either in the contents of a Book, or in a paragraph by itself in the text of a Topic.

The PrintCaptionTitle element corresponds to the "Caption" field on the Document tab of the File object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<PrintCaptionTitle></PrintCaptionTitle>
```

PrintFilename Element

Description

Name of the source file. This file must be of the Source Type and it must be in the specified Directory.

If you use the embedded picture it will be saved with this filename using the extension of the embedded file type or the output format specified. Any path or extension specified will be ignored. If you do not specify a filename then the Object Code will be used.

The PrintFilename element corresponds to the "Filename" field on the Document tab of the File object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<PrintFilename>flow.bmp</PrintFilename>
```

PrintFolder Element

Description

Directory containing the source file. This property supports relative folders. This property is ignored if you are using an Embedded file.

The PrintFolder element corresponds to the "Directory" field on the Document tab of the File object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 4000 characters long

Sample XML

```
<PrintFolder>C:\Program Files\AuthorIT
V4\Data\Libraries\Graphics</PrintFolder>
```

PrintOutputFormat Element

Description

Output file format of the external file used in your Printed document. "(source format)" uses the file format specified in the **Source Type**.

The PrintOutputFormat element contains an integer which represents the graphics format to be used when publishing.

The PrintOutputFormat element corresponds to the "Output as" field on the Document tab of the File object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 5, where: 0 = (source format) 1 = Graphics Interchange Format (*.gif) 2 = indows Bitmap (*.bmp) 3 = Portable Network Graphics (*.png) 4 = JPEG File Interchange Format (*.jpg;*.jpeg) 5 = Windows Metafile (*.wmf)

Sample XML

```
<PrintOutputFormat inherited="true">1</PrintOutputFormat>
```

PrintParagraphStyle Element

Description

Sets a relationship to the Style object defining the style that will be applied to the paragraph in the Printed document for this file.

Note: This property is only used when the File object is placed in the contents of a Book, and ignored when it is in the text of a Topic. If you set it to "(auto)", the Style of the last paragraph in the preceding Topic is used.

The PrintParagraphStyle element contains an integer which is the Object ID of the related Style object.

The PrintParagraphStyle element corresponds to the "Paragraph Style" field on the Document tab of the File object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<PrintParagraphStyle inherited="true">0</PrintParagraphStyle>
```

PrintScaleHeight Element

Description

Defines the Height and Width of the picture or OLE object inserted into the Word document as a percentage of the original file size.

The PrintScaleHeight element corresponds to the "Scale Height" field on the Document tab of the File object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Real	.001 to 999

Sample XML

```
<PrintScaleHeight inherited="true">100</PrintScaleHeight>
```

PrintScaleWidth Element

Description

Defines the Height and Width of the picture or OLE object inserted into the Word document as a percentage of the original file size.

The PrintScaleWidth element corresponds to the "Scale Width" field on the Document tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Real	.001 to 999

Sample XML

```
<PrintScaleWidth inherited="true">66.66</PrintScaleWidth>
```

PrintSizeHeight Element

Description

Defines the Height and Width of the picture or OLE object inserted into the Word document as an exact measurement in centimeters (1in = 2.54cm).

The PrintSizeHeight element corresponds to the "Size Height" field on the Document tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Real	0.01 to 55.87

Sample XML

```
<PrintSizeHeight inherited="true">1</PrintSizeHeight>
```

PrintSizeWidth Element

Description

Defines the Height and Width of the picture or OLE object inserted into the Word document as an exact measurement in centimeters (1in = 2.54cm).

The PrintSizeWidth element corresponds to the "Size Width" field on the Document tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Real	0.01 to 55.87

Sample XML

```
<PrintSizeWidth inherited="true">2.54</PrintSizeWidth>
```

PrintSizingMethod Element

Description

Allows you to choose how a picture or OLE object file will be sized in the Word document, either by Scale (percentage of original file size) or by size (in cm, 1in = 2.54cm).

The PrintSizingMethod element corresponds to the "Sub Title" field on the Document tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1, 2 where: 1 = By scale 2 = By size

Sample XML

```
<PrintSizingMethod inherited="true">1</PrintSizingMethod>
```

PrintSourceType Element

Description

Type of source file to be used in your Word output. Options may enable or disable when you choose a file type, as some properties are not applicable to some file types. The types available are:

- ▶▶ **Embedded Picture or OLE Object:** the embedded picture will be used. At the time of publishing, the embedded picture or OLE object is extracted to the format specified in Output as and linked to the Word document. If it is an OLE Object and Output as is set to "(source)" the embedded OLE object is copied and embedded in the Word document. This can give better printed results for vector based OLE objects.
- ▶▶ **Linked Picture files:** valid picture file formats that Microsoft Word can load.
- ▶▶ **Linked Document files:** preformatted Word, RTF, or text documents. These are inserted in the published document. This is a way of inserting complex formatting and documents.
- ▶▶ **Linked OLE objects:** any valid file type can be selected. At the time of publishing, this file is inserted into the document as an OLE object. The OLE server must be installed for the selected file type.

The PrintSourceType element corresponds to the "Source Type" field on the Document tab of the File object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 3, where: 0 = Linked Picture File (*.bmp;*.wmf;*.gif;*.jpg;*.pcx;*.tif;*.dib) 1 = Linked Document file (*.doc;*.rtf;*.txt) 2 = Linked OLE Object (*.*) 3 = Embedded Picture or OLE Object

Sample XML

```
<PrintSourceType inherited="true">3</PrintSourceType>
```

HelpBitmapAlignment Element

Description

Allows you to choose how the picture file will be aligned to the text in Windows Help.

The HelpBitmapAlignment element corresponds to the "Align Bitmap" radio buttons on the "Bitmap Options" sub-tab, of the Windows Help tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1 to 3, where: 1 = As a text character 2 = Along the left margin of the text 3 = Along the right margin of the text

Sample XML

```
<HelpBitmapAlignment inherited="true">1</HelpBitmapAlignment>
```

HelpFileName Element

Description

Name of the source file. This file must be of the Source Type and it must be in the specified Directory.

If you use the embedded picture it will be saved with this filename using the extension of the embedded file type or the output format specified. Any path or extension specified will be ignored. If you do not specify a filename then the Object Code will be used.

The HelpFileName element corresponds to the "Filename" field on the Windows Help tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<HelpFileName>flow.gif</HelpFileName>
```

HelpFolder Element**Description**

Directory containing the source file. This property supports relative folders. This property is ignored if you are using an Embedded file.

The HelpFolder element corresponds to the "Directory" field on the Windows Help tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 4000 characters long

Sample XML

```
<HelpFolder>C:\Program Files\AuthorIT  
V4\Data\Libraries\Graphics</HelpFolder>
```

HelpOutputFormat Element

Description

Output file format of the external file used in your Help document output. "(source format)" uses the file format specified in the **Source Type**.

The HelpOutputFormat element corresponds to the "Output as" field on the Windows Help tab of the File object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 5, where: 0 = (source format) 1 = Graphics Interchange Format (*.gif) 2 = Windows Bitmap (*.bmp) 3 = Portable Network Graphics (*.png) 4 = JPEG File Interchange Format (*.jpg;*.jpeg) 5 = Windows Metafile (*.wmf)

Sample XML

```
<HelpOutputFormat>0</HelpOutputFormat>
```

HelpParagraphStyle Element

Description

Sets a relationship to the Style object defining the style applied to the paragraph in Windows Help for this file.

Note: This property is only used when the File object is placed in the contents of a Book, and ignored when it is in the text of a Topic. If you set it to "(auto)", the Style of the last paragraph in the preceding Topic is used.

The HelpParagraphStyle element contains an integer Object ID of the related Style object.

The HelpParagraphStyle element corresponds to the "Paragraph Style" field on the Windows Help tab of the File object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<HelpParagraphStyle inherited="true">0</HelpParagraphStyle>
```

HelpScaleHeight Element

Description

Defines the Height and Width of the picture inserted into Windows Help as a percentage of the original file size.

The HelpScaleHeight element corresponds to the "Scale Height" field on the Windows Help tab of the File object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Real	.001 to 999

Sample XML

```
<HelpScaleHeight inherited="true">100</HelpScaleHeight>
```

HelpScaleWidth Element

Description

Defines the Height and Width of the picture inserted into Windows Help as a percentage of the original file size.

The HelpScaleWidth element corresponds to the "Scale Width" field on the Windows Help tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Real	.001 to 999

Sample XML

```
<HelpScaleWidth inherited="true">66.66</HelpScaleWidth>
```

HelpSizeHeight Element

Description

Defines the Height and Width of the picture inserted into Windows Help as an exact measurement in centimeters (1in = 2.54cm).

The HelpSizeHeight element corresponds to the "Size Height" field on the Windows Help tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Real	0.01 to 55.87

Sample XML

```
<HelpSizeHeight inherited="true">1</HelpSizeHeight>
```

HelpSizeWidth Element

Description

Defines the Height and Width of the picture inserted into Windows Help as an exact measurement in centimeters (1in = 2.54cm).

The HelpSizeWidth element corresponds to the "Size Width" field on the Windows Help tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Real	0.01 to 55.87

Sample XML

```
<HelpSizeWidth inherited="true">2.54</HelpSizeWidth>
```

HelpSizingMethod Element

Description

Allows you to choose how a picture file will be sized in Windows Help, either by Scale (percentage of original file size) or by size (in cm).

The HelpSizingMethod element corresponds to the "Sub Title" field on the Windows Help tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1, 2 where: 1 = By scale 2 = By size

Sample XML

```
<HelpSizingMethod inherited="true">1</HelpSizingMethod>
```

HelpSourceType Element

Description

Type of source file to be used in your Windows Help output. Other options may enable or disable when you choose a file type, as some properties are not applicable to some file types. The types available are:

- ▶▶ **Embedded Picture or OLE Object:** The embedded picture will be used. At the time of publishing, the embedded picture or OLE object is extracted to the format specified in Output as and linked to the Windows Help system.
- ▶▶ **Linked Picture files:** valid Windows Help picture file formats. These are; bitmaps (.bmp), Windows metafiles (.wmf), device independent bitmaps (.dib), segmented hypergraphics (.shg), multi-resolution bitmaps (.mrb).
- ▶▶ **Linked Video multimedia files:** windows AVI files.
- ▶▶ **Linked Coded RTF document:** precoded Windows help RTF documents. These will be inserted in the published document. This is a way of inserting complex formatting.
- ▶▶ **Linked OLE objects:** any valid file type can be selected. At the time of publishing, this file is inserted into the document as an OLE object. The OLE server must be installed for the selected file type.

The HelpSourceType element corresponds to the "Source type" field on the Windows Help tab of the File object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 4, where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 = Linked WinHelp Graphics file (*.bmp;*.gif;*.wmf;*.dib;*.shg;*.mrb) 1 = Linked Video multimedia file (*.avi) 2 = Linked Coded RTF (*.rtf) 3 = Linked OLE Object(*.*) 4 = Embedded Picture or OLE Object

Sample XML

```
<HelpSourceType inherited="true">4</HelpSourceType>
```

HelpVideoPlay Element

Description

Determines if the video in the Windows Help is automatically started when the help topic that contains it is opened.

The HelpVideoPlay element corresponds to the "Automatically start video" field, on the Video Options sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpVideoPlay inherited="true">false</HelpVideoPlay>
```

HelpVideoRepeat Element

Description

Determines if the video in the Windows Help is automatically repeated in a continuous loop.

The HelpVideoRepeat element corresponds to the "Automatically repeat" field, on the Video Options sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpVideoRepeat inherited="true">false</HelpVideoRepeat>
```

HelpVideoShowMenuButton Element**Description**

If Show Play Bar is set on, this determines if the play bar will contain a menu button.

The HelpVideoShowMenuButton element corresponds to the "Show menu button" field, on the Video Options sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpVideoShowMenuButton
inherited="true">false</HelpVideoShowMenuButton>
```

HelpVideoShowPlaybar Element

Description

Determines if the play bar of an AVI video in the Windows Help is visible.

The HelpVideoShowPlaybar element corresponds to the "Show play bar" field, on the Video Options sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpVideoShowPlaybar inherited="true">false</HelpVideoShowPlaybar>
```

WebAdditionalFiles Element

Description

Specifies a list of additional files required to support the **Linked Coded HTML** file. These can be any files that are referenced by the linked HTML file, such as a graphic. Author-it copies all files specified to the publishing folder when publishing HTML based outputs. An error is displayed if any of these files cannot be found. Relative or fixed paths are supported.

The WebAdditionalFiles element corresponds to the "Specify any additional file required" field, on the "Linked HTML" sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
AdditionalFile	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<WebAdditionalFiles inherited="true">
  <AdditionalFile>
    <Filename>..\Templates\Plain HTML\contents1.gif</Filename>
  </AdditionalFile>
</WebAdditionalFiles>
```

AdditionalFile Element**Description**

The AdditionalFile element is part of the WebAdditionalFiles structure.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

WebAdditionalFiles

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
Filename	No	Once

Sample XML

```
<WebAdditionalFiles inherited="true">
  <AdditionalFile>
    <Filename>..\Templates\Plain HTML\contents1.gif</Filename>
  </AdditionalFile>
</WebAdditionalFiles>
```

Filename Element

Description

The Filename element is part of the WebAdditionalFiles structure. This element contains a filename, including the file path. The filename may be relative or absolute, local or network.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

AdditionalFile

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 4000 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebAdditionalFiles inherited="true">
  <AdditionalFile>
    <Filename>..\Templates\Plain HTML\contents1.gif</Filename>
  </AdditionalFile>
</WebAdditionalFiles>
```

WebAlignment Element

Description

Allows you to choose the vertical alignment of the picture file inserted into the HTML pages, relative to the line in the text that the image is on.

The WebAlignment element contains an integer which represents ...

The WebAlignment element corresponds to the "Alignment" field on the "Image Options" sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	Top Middle Bottom Left Right

Sample XML

```
<WebAlignment inherited="true">Bottom</WebAlignment>
```

WebAltText Element**Description**

Defines the text that will appear in HTML pages while the image file is loading, or as an alternate to the image if it cannot be displayed for whatever reason. This property is automatically populated from the Description when you first create the object.

The WebAltText element corresponds to the "Alternate text" field on the Windows Help tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters

Sample XML

```
<WebAltText>Workflow diagram</WebAltText>
```

WebBorder Element

Description

Defines the thickness of a solid border around the picture file inserted into the HTML pages as an exact measurement. A setting of "0" (zero) will display no border.

This border thickness is expressed in pixels.

The WebBorder element corresponds to the "Border thickness" field on the Image Options sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	Integer followed by "px", e.g. "1 px"

Sample XML

```
<WebBorder inherited="true">0 px</WebBorder>
```

WebFolder Element

Description

Directory containing the source file. This property supports relative folders. This property is ignored if you are using an embedded file.

The WebFolder element corresponds to the "Directory" field on the HTML tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 4000 characters

Sample XML

```
<WebFolder inherited="true">C:\Program Files\AuthorIT
V4\Data\Libraries\Graphics</WebFolder>
```

WebHorizontalSpace Element**Description**

Defines the spacing around the picture file inserted into the HTML pages as an exact measurement.

The spacing is measured in pixels.

The WebHorizontalSpace element corresponds to the "Spacing around image: left and right" field on the "Size and Spacing" sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	number followed by " px"

Sample XML

```
<WebHorizontalSpace inherited="true">0 px</WebHorizontalSpace>
```

WebImageMap Element

Description

Defines the URL location (on the server) of a server side image map file, to associate with the picture file inserted into the HTML pages. The server must know how to deal with this image map.

The WebImageMap element corresponds to the "Image Map" field on the "Image Options" sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters

Sample XML

```
<WebImageMap>http://www.acme.com/cgi-bin/navbar.map</WebImageMap>
```

WebOutputFormat Element

Description

Output file format of the external file used in your HTML document outputs. "(source format)" uses the file format specified in the **Source Type**.

The WebOutputFormat element corresponds to the "Output as" field on the HTML tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 5, where: 0 = (source format) 1 = Graphics Interchange Format (*.gif) 2 = Windows Bitmap (*.bmp) 3 = Portable Network Graphics (*.png) 4 = JPEG File Interchange Format (*.jpg;*.jpeg) 5 = Windows Metafile (*.wmf)

Sample XML

```
<WebOutputFormat>0</WebOutputFormat>
```

WebSizeHeight Element**Description**

Defines the Height and Width of the picture file inserted into the HTML pages as either a percentage (%) of the original image size, or as an exact measurement.

The WebSizeHeight element corresponds to the "Height" field on the "Size and Spacing" sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the File object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

Data Type	Range
String	A number followed by "%" or "px"

Sample XML

```
<WebSizeHeight inherited="true">100 %</WebSizeHeight>
```

WebSizeWidth Element

Description

Defines the Height and Width of the picture file inserted into the HTML pages as either a percentage (%) of the original image size, or as an exact measurement.

The WebSizeWidth element corresponds to the "Width" field on the "Size and Spacing" sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	A number followed by "%" or "px"

Sample XML

```
<WebSizeWidth inherited="true">100 %</WebSizeWidth>
```

WebSourceType Element

Description

Type of source file to be used in your HTML outputs. Other options may enable or disable when you choose a file type, as some properties are not applicable to some file types. The types available are:

- ▶▶ **Embedded Picture or OLE Object:** the embedded picture will be used. At publishing time the embedded picture or OLE object is extracted to the format specified in Output as and linked to the HTML or HTML based Help.
- ▶▶ **Linked Picture files:** valid HTML picture file formats. These are: bitmaps (.bmp), device independent bitmaps (.dib), Compuserve gif s (.gif), JPEG files (.jpg).
- ▶▶ **Linked Video multimedia files:** windows AVI files.
- ▶▶ **Linked Coded HTML document:** precoded HTML documents. These will be inserted in the published document. This is a way of inserting complex formatting, Java script and applets and other specialized coding. Author-it only reads and inserts the information between the <BODY> & </BODY> tags. Information outside that is ignored.

The WebSourceType element corresponds to the "Source Type" field on the HTML tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0,1,2,5 - where: 0 = Linked Picture File (*.bmp;*.dib;*.gif;*.jpg) 1 = Linked Video multimedia file (*.avi) 2 = Linked Coded HTML file (*.htm;*.html) 5 = Embedded Picture or OLE Object

Sample XML

```
<WebSourceType inherited="true">5</WebSourceType>
```

WebVerticalSpace Element

Description

Defines the spacing around the picture file inserted into the HTML pages as an exact measurement.

The WebVerticalSpace element corresponds to the "Top and bottom" field on the "Size and spacing" sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	A number followed by " px"

Sample XML

```
<WebVerticalSpace inherited="true">0 px</WebVerticalSpace>
```

WebVideoRepeat Element

Description

Allows you to choose how many times to replay a Video file inserted into the HTML pages. You can choose continuous reply, or enter an exact number of times.

The WebVideoRepeat element corresponds to the "Continuous replay" field, on the "Video Options" sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1 or 2, where: 1 = Continuous replay 2 = Number of times to replay

Sample XML

```
<WebVideoRepeat inherited="true">1</WebVideoRepeat>
```

WebVideoRepeatTimes Element**Description**

Allows you to choose how many times to replay a Video file inserted into the HTML pages. You can choose continuous replay, or enter an exact number of times.

The WebVideoRepeatTimes element corresponds to the "Number of times to replay" field, on the "Video Options" sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1 to 99

Sample XML

```
<WebVideoRepeatTimes inherited="true">5</WebVideoRepeatTimes>
```

WebVideoShowControls Element

Description

Allows you to choose how many times to replay a Video file inserted into the HTML pages. You can choose continuous replay, or enter an exact number of times.

The WebVideoShowControls element corresponds to the "Display video controls" field, on the "Video Options" sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<WebVideoShowControls inherited="true">false</WebVideoShowControls>
```

WebVideoStart Element

Description

Allows you to choose how many times to replay a Video file inserted into the HTML pages. You can choose continuous replay, or enter an exact number of times.

The WebVideoStart element corresponds to the "Start video when" field, on the "Video Options" sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the File object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

File

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 3, where: 0 = The file is opened 1 = The mouse passes over the video 2 = Both 3 = User starts manually (don't autostart)

Sample XML

```
<WebVideoStart inherited="true">0</WebVideoStart>
```

Glossary Element

Description

The Glossary element represents an Author-it Glossary object, and contains all of its properties.



The Glossary object represents a Glossary of Terms in the printed and on-line documentation. It takes care of things like sorting the terms, help definition pop-ups, and how the Glossary will be represented in both printed and on-line documentation.

Any Topic objects placed one level below a Glossary object are considered to be a glossary term, and as such are alphabetically sorted. You may have additional levels, however only the topics on the first level are treated as glossary terms.

When glossary terms are published into a Word document, they are automatically assigned a heading style of "Heading 5" regardless of what you have entered in the Document Heading Style property. Also, super header and all section break information is ignored.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Values</u>
wordcount	Yes	Integer	>= 0

Parent Element

Objects

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
Object	No

Element	Optional
PrintAddLetterHeadings	Yes
PrintMedia	Yes
PrintSortTerms	Yes
PrintTitle	Yes
HelpPopUpColor	Yes
HelpPopUpColorType	Yes
HelpTitle	Yes
WebLinkType	Yes
WebMedia	Yes
WebTitle	Yes

Sample XML

```

<Glossary>
+ <Object>
  <PrintAddLetterHeadings>false</PrintAddLetterHeadings>
  <PrintMedia>299</PrintMedia>
  <PrintSortTerms>false</PrintSortTerms>
  <PrintTitle>Glossary</PrintTitle>
  <HelpPopUpColor>14876671</HelpPopUpColor>
  <HelpPopUpColorType>1</HelpPopUpColorType>
  <HelpPopUpType>1</HelpPopUpType>
  <HelpTitle>Glossary</HelpTitle>
  <WebLinkType>1</WebLinkType>
  <WebMedia>299</WebMedia>
  <WebTitle>Glossary</WebTitle>
</Glossary>

```

Object Element

Description

The Object element is used by all Author-it object types, and contains the properties that are common to all objects. In Author-it these properties can be found on the General tab of each object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Book, File, Glossary, Hyperlink, Index, IndexEntry, Macro, Media, Style, TableOfContents, TableOfFigures, TitlePage, Topic

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
BasedOn	Yes	Once
CreatedBy	Yes	Once
CreatedDate	Yes	Once
Description	No	Once
FolderID	Yes	Once
GUID	No	Once
ID	No	Once
IncludelnHelp	Yes	Once
IncludelnPrint	Yes	Once
IncludelnWeb	Yes	Once
IsTemplate	Yes	Once
Key	Yes	Once
LocalizationID	Yes	Once
ModifiedBy	Yes	Once
ModifiedDate	Yes	Once
ReleaseStateID	Yes	Once
Status	Yes	Once
Type	Yes	Once
Version	Yes	Once

Sample XML

```
<Object>
  <BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
  <CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
  <CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
  <Description>Using Notepad</Description>
  <FolderID>3</FolderID>
  <GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
  <ID>164</ID>
  <IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
  <IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
  <IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
  <IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
  <Key>164</Key>
  <LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
  <ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
  <ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
  <ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
  <Status>1</Status>
  <Type>Book</Type>
  <Version>1</Version>
</Object>
```

BasedOn Element

Description

Allows you to choose the template on which the object will be based. The names that appear in this list are derived from the Description property of an object template. The object templates that appear may depend on your security access.

The BasedOn element corresponds to the "Base this object on and inherit properties from template" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (A valid template object ID)

Sample XML

```
<BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
```

CreatedBy Element

Description

The CreatedBy element contains the user name of the person who created the object. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	1 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
```

CreatedDate Element

Description

The CreatedDate element contains the date that the object was created. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
```

Description Element

Description

Defines a descriptive name for the object. This description will be displayed as the name of the object throughout Author-it.

Note: You should enter a description that will make your objects easy to identify and find. In some object types, the description is copied to other properties when you first create the object. For example, in the Topic object the text is copied to the Print Heading, Help Heading, and the Web Heading properties.

The Description element corresponds to the "Description" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Description>Using Notepad</Description>
```

FolderID Element

Description

The FolderID element corresponds to the ID of the folder that the object is located in.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	≥ 1 (A valid folder ID)

Sample XML

```
<FolderID>3</FolderID>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains a globally unique identifier.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
```

ID Element

Description

The ID element contains the object ID. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<ID>164</ID>
```

IncludeInHelp Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInHelp element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Windows Help" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
```

IncludeInPrint Element**Description**

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInPrint element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Word Document" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
```

IncludeInWeb Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInWeb element corresponds to the "(Include object in) HTML" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
```

IsTemplate Element

Description

Determines if this object is an object template. If you check this property, the object becomes a template.

Note: You can only set this property when the object is first created, and if you have the required security access.

The IsTemplate element corresponds to the "Make this object an object template" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IsTemplate>false</IsTemplate>
```

Key Element

Description

Unique identifier for the object, which you cannot change. This number can be used for linking topics when you're producing context-sensitive Help. The number does not change if you create versions of the object.

The Key element corresponds to the "Object code" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Key>164</Key>
```

LocalizationID Element

Description

The LocalizationID element is used with localization libraries to define which localization an object belongs to (e.g. what language the object is in).

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
```

ModifiedBy Element

Description

The ModifiedBy element contains the user name of the user who last updated the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
```

ModifiedDate Element

Description

The ModifiedDate element contains the date and time the the object was last updated. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
```

ReleaseStateID Element

Description

The ReleaseStateID element contains the ID of the release state of the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
```

Status Element

Description

A read-only text property that contains the current status of the version of the object. A version of an object can move through several different states during its life cycle.

This field is shown in the "Object status" field, on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 2, where: 0=Inactive 1=Active 2=Redundant

Sample XML

```
<Status>1</Status>
```

Type Element

Description

The Type element contains the object type of the object. This field contains a string which represents which type of object this is.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Type>Book</Type>
```

Version Element

Description

Contains a read-only unique version number for each version of an object. The Object Code will not change from one version of an object to another.

This field is displayed in the "Object version" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Version>1</Version>
```

PrintAddLetterHeadings Element

Description

Determines if Author-it will automatically add alphabet (A-Z) headings to the glossary terms. A "Glossary Heading" style is automatically applied in the Word document.

The PrintAddLetterHeadings element corresponds to the "Add alphabet headings" field on the Document tab of the Glossary object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Glossary

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintAddLetterHeadings>false</PrintAddLetterHeadings>
```

PrintMedia Element

Description

Sets a relationship to a Media object that defines the page setup and layout of the Glossary section. A Glossary always starts a new section, so you must select a Media object.

The PrintMedia element corresponds to the "Sub Title" field on the Document tab of the Glossary object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Glossary

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<PrintMedia>299</PrintMedia>
```

PrintSortTerms Element

Description

Determines if the glossary terms are alphabetically (A-Z) sorted in the Word document.

The PrintSortTerms element corresponds to the "Sort glossary terms" field on the Document tab of the Glossary object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Glossary

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintSortTerms>>false</PrintSortTerms>
```

PrintTitle Element

Description

Defines a title for the Glossary in the printed document. The Glossary title has a "Heading 1" style automatically applied in the Word document.

The PrintTitle element corresponds to the "Glossary title" field on the Document tab of the Glossary object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Glossary

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<PrintTitle>Glossary</PrintTitle>
```

HelpPopUpColor Element

Description

The HelpPopUpColor element contains an integer which represents the color to be used for the background of the popup window

The HelpPopUpColor element corresponds to the "Pop-up color, Custom" field on the Windows Help tab of the Glossary object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Glossary

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 1677721, where 0 = black 16777215 = white

Sample XML

```
<HelpPopUpColor>14876671</HelpPopUpColor>
```

HelpPopUpType Element

Description

Allows you to choose how Author-it will build the pop-up definitions in the help system from occurrences of the glossary terms throughout the text of the help.

The HelpPopUpType element corresponds to the "Definition Pop-ups" field on the Windows Help tab of the Glossary object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Glossary

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1 to 3, where: 1 = Don't create definition pop-ups 2 = Create pop-ups for the first occurrence of a definition in each topic 3 = Create pop-up for all definitions

Sample XML

```
<HelpPopUpType>1</HelpPopUpType>
```

HelpTitle Element

Description

Defines a title for the Glossary in Windows Help. This title will appear in the contents of the help system.

The HelpTitle element corresponds to the "Sub Title" field on the Document tab of the Glossary object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Glossary

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<HelpTitle>Glossary</HelpTitle>
```

WebLinkType Element

Description

Allows you to choose how Author-it will build the definitions links to the Glossary page from occurrences of the glossary terms throughout the text of the HTML.

The WebLinkType element corresponds to the "Definition links" field on the HTML tab of the Glossary object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Glossary

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	1 to 3, where: 1 = Don't create definition links 2 = Create links for the first occurrence of a definition in each topic 3 = Create links for all definitions

Sample XML

```
<WebLinkType>1</WebLinkType>
```

WebMedia Element

Description

Set a relationship to a Media object that defines the HTML page setup of the Glossary page. A Glossary always starts a new HTML page, so you must select a Media object.

The WebMedia element corresponds to the "Media" field on the HTML tab of the Glossary object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Glossary

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	>= 1 (an object id of a media object)

Sample XML

```
<WebMedia>299</WebMedia>
```

WebTitle Element

Description

Defines a title for the Glossary in the HTML pages. This title has a "Heading 1" style automatically applied in the published HTML. If a Style object with the same name exists, its CSS definition will be used.

The WebTitle element corresponds to the "Sub Title" field on the Document tab of the Glossary object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Glossary

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebTitle>Glossary</WebTitle>
```

Hyperlink Element

Description

The Hyperlink element represents an Author-it Hyperlink object, and contains all of its properties.



A Hyperlink object represents one or more links between individual characters in a Topic object and other Topic objects and/or Internet URL locations. When published these links become hypertext jumps in Help and HTML, and page number cross references or footnotes in the printed documentation.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Values</u>
wordcount	Yes	Integer	>= 0

Parent Element

Objects

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
Object	No
HyperLinksTargets	Yes
PrintCrossRefBrackets	Yes
PrintCrossRefIncludeHeading	Yes
PrintCrossRefIncludePageNum	Yes
PrintCrossRefPageNumText	Yes
PrintCrossRefText	Yes
PrintFootnoteCustomRef	Yes
PrintFootnoteNumberFormat	Yes
PrintFootnoteNumberType	Yes
PrintLinkType	Yes
HelpIncludeButton	Yes
HelpJumpType	Yes
HelpRemoveUnderline	Yes
HelpWindow	Yes
WebHHPopupFontName	Yes
WebHHPopupFontSize	Yes
WebHHPopupMarginsLR	Yes
WebHHPopupMarginsTB	Yes
WebJumpType	Yes
WebOpenWithJavaScript	Yes
WebWindowHeight	Yes
WebWindowLeft	Yes

Element	Optional
WebWindowName	Yes
WebWindowResizable	Yes
WebWindowStatusBar	Yes
WebWindowToolBar	Yes
WebWindowTop	Yes
WebWindowWidth	Yes

Sample XML

```

<Hyperlink>
+ <Object>
  <HyperLinksTargets />
  <PrintCrossRefBrackets>true</PrintCrossRefBrackets>
  <PrintCrossRefIncludeHeading>2</PrintCrossRefIncludeHeading>
  <PrintCrossRefIncludePageNum>true</PrintCrossRefIncludePageNum>
  <PrintCrossRefPageNumText>on page</PrintCrossRefPageNumText>
  <PrintCrossRefText>see</PrintCrossRefText>
  <PrintFootnoteCustomRef />
  <PrintFootnoteNumberFormat>0</PrintFootnoteNumberFormat>
  <PrintFootnoteNumberType>1</PrintFootnoteNumberType>
  <PrintLinkType>1</PrintLinkType>
  <HelpIncludeButton>false</HelpIncludeButton>
  <HelpJumpType>1</HelpJumpType>
  <HelpRemoveUnderline>false</HelpRemoveUnderline>
  <HelpWindow>0</HelpWindow>
  <WebHHPopupFontName>Arial</WebHHPopupFontName>
  <WebHHPopupFontSize>9 pt</WebHHPopupFontSize>
  <WebHHPopupMarginsLR>10 px</WebHHPopupMarginsLR>
  <WebHHPopupMarginsTB>10 px</WebHHPopupMarginsTB>
  <WebJumpType>1</WebJumpType>
- <WebJumpURLs>
  - <WebJumpURL>
    <Target>http://www.author-it.com</Target>
    <Description>AuthorIT Website</Description>
  </WebJumpURL>
</WebJumpURLs>
  <WebOpenWithJavaScript>false</WebOpenWithJavaScript>
  <WebWindowHeight>200 px</WebWindowHeight>
  <WebWindowLeft>100 px</WebWindowLeft>
  <WebWindowName />
  <WebWindowResizable>false</WebWindowResizable>
  <WebWindowStatusBar>false</WebWindowStatusBar>
  <WebWindowToolBar>false</WebWindowToolBar>
  <WebWindowTop>100 px</WebWindowTop>
  <WebWindowWidth>200 px</WebWindowWidth>
</Hyperlink>

```

Object Element

Description

The Object element is used by all Author-it object types, and contains the properties that are common to all objects. In Author-it these properties can be found on the General tab of each object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Book, File, Glossary, Hyperlink, Index, IndexEntry, Macro, Media, Style, TableOfContents, TableOfFigures, TitlePage, Topic

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
BasedOn	Yes	Once
CreatedBy	Yes	Once
CreatedDate	Yes	Once
Description	No	Once
FolderID	Yes	Once
GUID	No	Once
ID	No	Once
IncludeInHelp	Yes	Once
IncludeInPrint	Yes	Once
IncludeInWeb	Yes	Once
IsTemplate	Yes	Once
Key	Yes	Once
LocalizationID	Yes	Once
ModifiedBy	Yes	Once
ModifiedDate	Yes	Once
ReleaseStateID	Yes	Once
Status	Yes	Once
Type	Yes	Once
Version	Yes	Once

Sample XML

```

<Object>
  <BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
  <CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
  <CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
  <Description>Using Notepad</Description>
  <FolderID>3</FolderID>
  <GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
  <ID>164</ID>
  <IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
  <IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
  <IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
  <IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
  <Key>164</Key>
  <LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
  <ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
  <ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
  <ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
  <Status>1</Status>
  <Type>Book</Type>
  <Version>1</Version>
</Object>

```

BasedOn Element**Description**

Allows you to choose the template on which the object will be based. The names that appear in this list are derived from the Description property of an object template. The object templates that appear may depend on your security access.

The BasedOn element corresponds to the "Base this object on and inherit properties from template" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (A valid template object ID)

Sample XML

```

<BasedOn>67</BasedOn>

```

CreatedBy Element

Description

The CreatedBy element contains the user name of the person who created the object. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	1 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
```

CreatedDate Element

Description

The CreatedDate element contains the date that the object was created. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
```

Description Element

Description

Defines a descriptive name for the object. This description will be displayed as the name of the object throughout Author-it.

Note: You should enter a description that will make your objects easy to identify and find. In some object types, the description is copied to other properties when you first create the object. For example, in the Topic object the text is copied to the Print Heading, Help Heading, and the Web Heading properties.

The Description element corresponds to the "Description" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Description>Using Notepad</Description>
```

FolderID Element

Description

The FolderID element corresponds to the ID of the folder that the object is located in.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1 (A valid folder ID)

Sample XML

```
<FolderID>3</FolderID>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains a globally unique identifier.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
```

ID Element**Description**

The ID element contains the object ID. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<ID>164</ID>
```

IncludeInHelp Element**Description**

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInHelp element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Windows Help" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
```

IncludeInPrint Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInPrint element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Word Document" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
```

IncludeInWeb Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInWeb element corresponds to the "(Include object in) HTML" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
```

IsTemplate Element

Description

Determines if this object is an object template. If you check this property, the object becomes a template.

Note: You can only set this property when the object is first created, and if you have the required security access.

The IsTemplate element corresponds to the "Make this object an object template" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
```

Key Element

Description

Unique identifier for the object, which you cannot change. This number can be used for linking topics when you're producing context-sensitive Help. The number does not change if you create versions of the object.

The Key element corresponds to the "Object code" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Key>164</Key>
```

LocalizationID Element

Description

The LocalizationID element is used with localization libraries to define which localization an object belongs to (e.g. what language the object is in).

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
```

ModifiedBy Element

Description

The ModifiedBy element contains the user name of the user who last updated the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
```

ModifiedDate Element

Description

The ModifiedDate element contains the date and time the the object was last updated. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
```

ReleaseStateID Element

Description

The ReleaseStateID element contains the ID of the release state of the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
```

Status Element

Description

A read-only text property that contains the current status of the version of the object. A version of an object can move through several different states during its life cycle.

This field is shown in the "Object status" field, on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 2, where: 0=Inactive 1=Active 2=Redundant

Sample XML

```
<Status>1</Status>
```

Type Element

Description

The Type element contains the object type of the object. This field contains a string which represents which type of object this is.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Type>Book</Type>
```

Version Element

Description

Contains a read-only unique version number for each version of an object. The Object Code will not change from one version of an object to another.

This field is displayed in the "Object version" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Version>1</Version>
```

HyperLinksTargets Element

Description

A list that allows you to set relationships to Topic objects that will be published into cross references, or footnotes in the Word document, or jumps in the Windows help and HTML files. You can use drag and drop or the shortcut (right-click) menu to set a relationship.

Note: If any of the specified Topics are not part of the Book being published then they will be ignored at publishing time.

The HyperLinksTargets element corresponds to the "Internal object links" field on the Hypertext links tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
Relation	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<HyperLinksTargets>
- <Relation>
  <ID>3543</ID>
</Relation>
</HyperLinksTargets>
```

Relation Element

Description

The Relation element contains an ID element which represents an Author-it object to which the parent has a relationship.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

HelpMultiBookTargets, HyperLinksTargets, Targets

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
ID	No

Sample XML

```
<HyperLinksTargets>
- <Relation>
  <ID>3543</ID>
</Relation>
</HyperLinksTargets>
```

Relation Element

Description

The ID element is part of the relations structure, and contains a number which represents an Author-it object to which the parent has a relationship.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Relation

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0, an object id

Sample XML

```
<HyperLinksTargets>
- <Relation>
  <ID>3543</ID>
</Relation>
</HyperLinksTargets>
```

PrintCrossRefBrackets Element

Description

Determines if all the cross references are enclosed in brackets. If more than one reference is created, each will be separated by a comma, but the group will be enclosed in brackets.

The PrintCrossRefBrackets element corresponds to the "Enclose all referneces in brackets" field, on the "Cross reference" sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintCrossRefBrackets>true</PrintCrossRefBrackets>
```

PrintCrossRefIncludeHeading Element

Description

Allows you to choose when the Print Heading of the Topics being referenced will be inserted into the cross reference. The Reference Text is only included when the heading is inserted.

The PrintCrossRefIncludeHeading element corresponds to the "Heading text" field, on the "Cross reference" sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	1 to 3, where: 1 = Don't include heading text 2 = Include only when heading text is different to selection 3 = Always include heading text

Sample XML

```
<PrintCrossRefIncludeHeading>2</PrintCrossRefIncludeHeading>
```

PrintCrossRefIncludePageNum Element**Description**

Determines if a page number is inserted for the cross reference. If selected, you can also enter some text to precede the page number. For example you might enter "on page".

The PrintCrossRefIncludePageNum element corresponds to the "Include page number" field, on the "Cross reference" sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintCrossRefIncludePageNum>true</PrintCrossRefIncludePageNum>
```

PrintCrossRefPageNumText Element

Description

Determines if a page number is inserted for the cross reference. If selected, you can also enter some text to precede the page number. For example you might enter "on page".

The PrintCrossRefPageNumText element corresponds to the "Include page number" field, on the "Cross reference" sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<PrintCrossRefPageNumText>on page</PrintCrossRefPageNumText>
```

PrintCrossRefText Element

Description

Defines the text that will precede the cross reference. For example you might enter "see", or "refer to".

The PrintCrossRefText element corresponds to the "Reference text" field, on the "Cross reference" sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<PrintCrossRefText>see</PrintCrossRefText>
```

PrintFootnoteCustomRef Element**Description**

Defines the custom mark that will be used to mark your footnote. Choose **Symbol** to select a special character or symbol.

The PrintFootnoteCustomRef element corresponds to the "Custom" field on the Document tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<PrintFootnoteCustomRef>#</PrintFootnoteCustomRef>
```

PrintFootnoteNumberFormat Element

Description

Allows you to choose from a variety of automatic numbering styles used to number your footnotes.

The PrintFootnoteNumberFormat element corresponds to the "Automatic" combo field, on the Footnote sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 4, where: 0 = 1,2,3 ... 1 = a,b,c ... 2 = A,B,C ... 3 = i,ii,iii ... 4 = I,II,III ...

Sample XML

```
<PrintFootnoteNumberFormat>0</PrintFootnoteNumberFormat>
```

PrintFootnoteNumberType Element

Description

Allows you to choose the type of numbering used for footnotes - Automatic or Custom.

The PrintFootnoteNumberType element corresponds to the "Numbering" options field, on the Footnote sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	1 to 2, where: 1 = Automatic 2 = Custom

Sample XML

```
<PrintFootnoteNumberType>1</PrintFootnoteNumberType>
```

PrintLinkType Element**Description**

Allows you to choose how the Hypertext Link will be inserted:

- ▶▶ **Cross reference:** a page number cross reference is created if the destination topic is found in the book being published.
- ▶▶ **Footnote:** the unformatted text of the destination topic is inserted as a footnote.

Note: Footnotes are limited to a maximum of 500 characters and cannot contain multiple paragraphs or special formatting. If the destination topic contains more than 500 characters, only the first 500 characters are used.

- ▶▶ **Embedded inline:** the anchor text is removed and replaced with the text of the destination topic.
- ▶▶ **Embedded block:** the fully formatted text of the destination topic is inserted as an embedded topic. If the hyperlink occupies the entire paragraph it is replaced, otherwise a new paragraph is created following the one containing the hyperlink.
- ▶▶ **Note:** When using either embedded option, only the first topic in the hyperlink is used. If the link targets multiple topics, the remaining topics are ignored.

The PrintLinkType element corresponds to the "Insert link as" field on the Document tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 1 = Cross reference 2 = Footnote 3 = Embedded topic

Sample XML

```
<PrintLinkType>1</PrintLinkType>
```

HelpIncludeButton element

Description

Determines if a WinHelp button will precede the hotspot text in the Topic. This button is similar to the one that precedes the Related Topics section.

The HelpIncludeButton element corresponds to the "Include a button before the hot-spot" field on the Windows Help tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpIncludeButton>>false</HelpIncludeButton>
```

HelpJumpType Element

Description

Allows you to choose how the Hypertext Link will be inserted into Windows Help.

The HelpJumpType element corresponds to the "Jump from hot-spot to" field on the Windows Help tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1 to 3, where: 1 = Default topic window 2 = Popup 3 = Window

Sample XML

```
<HelpJumpType>1</HelpJumpType>
```

HelpRemoveUnderline Element

Description

Determines if the coloring and the underline will be removed from the hotspot. By default all jumps in Windows Help have an underline and are colored, usually green.

The HelpRemoveUnderline element corresponds to the "Remove hot-spot underline" field on the Windows Help tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpRemoveUnderline>false</HelpRemoveUnderline>
```

HelpWindow Element

Description

Sets a relationship with a Media object that defines the help window that the Topics will be displayed in for this jump.

The HelpWindow element corresponds to the "Window:" field on the Windows Help tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<HelpWindow>0</HelpWindow>
```

WebHHPopupFontName Element

Description

Allows you to choose the font face for the HTML Help Popup.

The WebHHPopupFontName element corresponds to the "Font name" field, on the Popup sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 10 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebHHPopupFontName>Arial</WebHHPopupFontName>
```

WebHHPopupFontSize Element

Description

Allows you to choose the font size for the HTML Help Popup.

The WebHHPopupFontSize element corresponds to the "Font size" field, on the Popup sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 10 characters long, a number between 1 and 72 inclusive, followed by " pt"

Sample XML

```
<WebHHPopupFontSize>9 pt</WebHHPopupFontSize>
```

WebHHPopupMarginsLR Element

Description

Allows you to choose the margins for the HTML Help Popup. These are the distance from the edge of the popup window to the edge of the text.

The WebHHPopupMarginsLR element corresponds to the "Left and right" field, on the Popup sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 10 characters long, a number followed by a two letter unit (em, ex, or px)

Sample XML

```
<WebHHPopupMarginsLR>10 px</WebHHPopupMarginsLR>
```

WebHHPopupMarginsTB Element

Description

Allows you to choose the margins for the HTML Help Popup. These are the distance from the edge of the popup window to the edge of the text.

The WebHHPopupMarginsTB element corresponds to the "Top and bottom" field, on the Popup sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 10 characters long, a number followed by a two letter unit (em, ex, or px)

Sample XML

```
<WebHHPopupMarginsTB>8 px</WebHHPopupMarginsTB>
```

WebJumpType element

Description

Where the target of the link will appear.

The WebJumpType element corresponds to the "Jump from anchor to" field on the HTML tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	1 to 3, where: 1 = Same window (normal) 2 = New window 3 = Popup

Sample XML

```
<WebJumpType>1</WebJumpType>
```

WebJumpURLs Element

Description

This is a list of all the Internet URLs that this Hypertext link will create links to in the published output. This list contains 2 columns:

- ▶▶ **URL:** this is the actual URL of the external link
- ▶▶ **Description:** a descriptive name for the URL (displayed when the cursor hovers over the link in the published output)

The WebJumpURLs element corresponds to the "Internet object links" field on the Hypertext links tab of the Hyperlink object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Hyperlink

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
WebJumpURL	No	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```

<WebJumpURLs>
- <WebJumpURL>
    <Target>http://www.author-it.com</Target>
    <Description>AuthorIT Website</Description>
  </WebJumpURL>
</WebJumpURLs>

```

Index Element

Description

The Index element represents an Author-it Index object, and contains all of its properties.

An Index object represents an index in both the printed and on-line documentation. The Index object contains a hierarchical outline list in which the Index Entry objects can be arranged to form the structure of the index. When published, the index can be based on all headings in the document, any cross-references, and any Index Entry objects that contain objects found in the Book being published.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Values</u>
wordcount	Yes	Integer	>= 0

Parent Element

Objects

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
Object	No
IndexNodes	Yes
PrintFromEntries	Yes
PrintFromHeadings	Yes
PrintFromLinks	Yes
PrintIndexType	Yes
PrintMedia	Yes
PrintRightAlign	Yes
PrintTitle	Yes
HelpFromEntries	Yes
HelpFromHeadings	Yes
HelpFromLinks	Yes

Element	Optional
HelpMultiBookTargets	Yes
WebFromEntries	Yes
WebFromHeadings	Yes
WebFromLinks	Yes
WebHHIndexTemplate	Yes
WebHHSitemapTemplate	Yes
WebIndexType	Yes
WebJHIndexTemplate	Yes
WebMedia	Yes
WebOHIndexTemplate	Yes
WebTitle	Yes

Sample XML

```

<Index>
+ <Object>
- <IndexNodes>
  <Node id="1041" />
  - <Node id="470">
    - <ChildNodes>
      <Node id="471" />
      <Node id="472" />
    </ChildNodes>
  </Node>
  <Node id="927" />
  <Node id="812" />
</IndexNodes>
<PrintFromEntries inherited="true">true</PrintFromEntries>
<PrintFromHeadings inherited="true">true</PrintFromHeadings>
<PrintFromLinks inherited="true">true</PrintFromLinks>
<PrintIndexType inherited="true">1</PrintIndexType>
<PrintMedia inherited="true">34</PrintMedia>
<PrintRightAlign inherited="true">false</PrintRightAlign>
<PrintTitle inherited="true">Index</PrintTitle>
<HelpFromEntries inherited="true">true</HelpFromEntries>
<HelpFromHeadings inherited="true">true</HelpFromHeadings>
<HelpFromLinks inherited="true">true</HelpFromLinks>
<HelpMultiBookTargets />
<WebFromEntries inherited="true">true</WebFromEntries>
<WebFromHeadings inherited="true">true</WebFromHeadings>
<WebFromLinks inherited="true">true</WebFromLinks>
<WebHHIndexTemplate />
<WebHHSitemapTemplate>Templates\Index.hhk</WebHHSitemapTemplate>
<WebIndexType inherited="true">1</WebIndexType>
<WebJHIndexTemplate
inherited="true">Templates\jh_index.xml</WebJHIndexTemplate>
<WebMedia inherited="true">34</WebMedia>
<WebOHIndexTemplate
inherited="true">Templates\jh_index.xml</WebOHIndexTemplate>
<WebTitle inherited="true">Index</WebTitle>
</Index>

```

Object Element

Description

The Object element is used by all Author-it object types, and contains the properties that are common to all objects. In Author-it these properties can be found on the General tab of each object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Book, File, Glossary, Hyperlink, Index, IndexEntry, Macro, Media, Style, TableOfContents, TableOfFigures, TitlePage, Topic

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
BasedOn	Yes	Once
CreatedBy	Yes	Once
CreatedDate	Yes	Once
Description	No	Once
FolderID	Yes	Once
GUID	No	Once
ID	No	Once
IncludelnHelp	Yes	Once
IncludelnPrint	Yes	Once
IncludelnWeb	Yes	Once
IsTemplate	Yes	Once
Key	Yes	Once
LocalizationID	Yes	Once
ModifiedBy	Yes	Once
ModifiedDate	Yes	Once
ReleaseStateID	Yes	Once
Status	Yes	Once
Type	Yes	Once
Version	Yes	Once

Sample XML

```
<Object>
  <BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
  <CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
  <CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
  <Description>Using Notepad</Description>
  <FolderID>3</FolderID>
  <GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
  <ID>164</ID>
  <IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
  <IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
  <IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
  <IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
  <Key>164</Key>
  <LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
  <ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
  <ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
  <ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
  <Status>1</Status>
  <Type>Book</Type>
  <Version>1</Version>
</Object>
```

BasedOn Element

Description

Allows you to choose the template on which the object will be based. The names that appear in this list are derived from the Description property of an object template. The object templates that appear may depend on your security access.

The BasedOn element corresponds to the "Base this object on and inherit properties from template" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (A valid template object ID)

Sample XML

```
<BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
```

CreatedBy Element

Description

The CreatedBy element contains the user name of the person who created the object. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	1 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
```

CreatedDate Element

Description

The CreatedDate element contains the date that the object was created. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
```

Description Element

Description

Defines a descriptive name for the object. This description will be displayed as the name of the object throughout Author-it.

Note: You should enter a description that will make your objects easy to identify and find. In some object types, the description is copied to other properties when you first create the object. For example, in the Topic object the text is copied to the Print Heading, Help Heading, and the Web Heading properties.

The Description element corresponds to the "Description" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Description>Using Notepad</Description>
```

FolderID Element

Description

The FolderID element corresponds to the ID of the folder that the object is located in.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	≥ 1 (A valid folder ID)

Sample XML

```
<FolderID>3</FolderID>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains a globally unique identifier.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
```

ID Element

Description

The ID element contains the object ID. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<ID>164</ID>
```

IncludeInHelp Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInHelp element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Windows Help" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
```

IncludeInPrint Element**Description**

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInPrint element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Word Document" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
```

IncludeInWeb Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInWeb element corresponds to the "(Include object in) HTML" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
```

IsTemplate Element

Description

Determines if this object is an object template. If you check this property, the object becomes a template.

Note: You can only set this property when the object is first created, and if you have the required security access.

The IsTemplate element corresponds to the "Make this object an object template" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IsTemplate>false</IsTemplate>
```

Key Element

Description

Unique identifier for the object, which you cannot change. This number can be used for linking topics when you're producing context-sensitive Help. The number does not change if you create versions of the object.

The Key element corresponds to the "Object code" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Key>164</Key>
```

LocalizationID Element

Description

The LocalizationID element is used with localization libraries to define which localization an object belongs to (e.g. what language the object is in).

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
```

ModifiedBy Element

Description

The ModifiedBy element contains the user name of the user who last updated the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
```

ModifiedDate Element

Description

The ModifiedDate element contains the date and time the the object was last updated. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
```

ReleaseStateID Element

Description

The ReleaseStateID element contains the ID of the release state of the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
```

Status Element

Description

A read-only text property that contains the current status of the version of the object. A version of an object can move through several different states during its life cycle.

This field is shown in the "Object status" field, on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 2, where: 0=Inactive 1=Active 2=Redundant

Sample XML

```
<Status>1</Status>
```

Type Element

Description

The Type element contains the object type of the object. This field contains a string which represents which type of object this is.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Type>Book</Type>
```

Version Element

Description

Contains a read-only unique version number for each version of an object. The Object Code will not change from one version of an object to another.

This field is displayed in the "Object version" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Version>1</Version>
```

IndexNodes Element

Description

A hierarchical outline list that allows you to set relationships to Index Entry objects that will form the content and structure of your index.

The IndexNodes element is used to represent the contents of the Index. It is shown in Author-it as a tree structure. This element contains a node hierarchy which outlines the relationships between the child elements.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Index

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
Node	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<IndexNodes>
  <Node id="1041" />
  - <Node id="470">
    - <ChildNodes>
      <Node id="471" />
      <Node id="472" />
    </ChildNodes>
  </Node>
  <Node id="927" />
  <Node id="812" />
</IndexNodes>
```

Node Element

Description

The Node element is used to represent an item which appears in a node hierarchy. The hierarchy is recursive, so a node can contain other nodes as children. If the node is a parent of other nodes it will contain a ChildNodes element.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type	Range
id	No	Integer	>= 1 (an object ID)

Parent Element

ContentsNodes, IndexNodes, ChildNode

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
ChildNodes	Yes	Zero or one times

Sample XML

```

<Node id="105" />
<Node id="109" />
<Node id="182">
  <ChildNodes>
    <Node id="110">
      <ChildNodes>
        <Node id="167" />
        <Node id="169" />
      </ChildNodes>
    </Node>
  </ChildNodes>
</Node>
<Node id="180" />
<Node id="113" />

```

ChildNodes Element

Description

The ChildNodes element contains a number of nodes that are children of another node element.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Node

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
Node	No	One to many times

Sample XML

```

<Node id="105" />
<Node id="109" />
<Node id="182">
  <ChildNodes>
    <Node id="110">
      <ChildNodes>
        <Node id="167" />
        <Node id="169" />
      </ChildNodes>
    </Node>
  </ChildNodes>
</Node>
<Node id="180" />
<Node id="113" />

```

PrintFromEntries Element**Description**

Determines what entries Author-it will include in the index. You can choose one or more options:

- ▶▶ **Index Entries** will include entries defined in the Index Contents.
- ▶▶ **Topic Heading** will include an entry for each Document Topic Heading.
- ▶▶ **Cross References** will include an entry for the referenced Topic, at the point from where it is referenced.

The PrintFromEntries element corresponds to the "(Build index from) Index entries" field on the Document tab of the Index object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintFromEntries inherited="true">true</PrintFromEntries>
```

PrintFromHeadings Element

Description

Determines what entries Author-it will include in the index. You can choose one or more options:

- ▶▶ **Index Entries** will include entries defined in the Index Contents.
- ▶▶ **Topic Heading** will include an entry for each Document Topic Heading.
- ▶▶ **Cross References** will include an entry for the referenced Topic, at the point from where it is referenced.

The PrintFromHeadings element corresponds to the "(Build index from) Topic headings" field on the Document tab of the Index object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintFromHeadings inherited="true">true</PrintFromHeadings>
```

PrintFromLinks Element

Description

Determines what entries Author-it will include in the index. You can choose one or more options:

- ▶▶ **Index Entries** will include entries defined in the Index Contents.
- ▶▶ **Topic Heading** will include an entry for each Document Topic Heading.
- ▶▶ **Cross References** will include an entry for the referenced Topic, at the point from where it is referenced.

The PrintFromLinks element corresponds to the "(Build index from) Cross references" field on the Document tab of the Index object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintFromLinks inherited="true">true</PrintFromLinks>
```

PrintIndexType Element

Description

Allows you to choose the type of index to create - Indented (usual) or Run-in (older type, not used these days).

The PrintIndexType element corresponds to the "Type" field on the Document tab of the Index object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1 or 2, where: 1 = Indented 2 = Run-in

Sample XML

```
<PrintIndexType inherited="true">1</PrintIndexType>
```

PrintMedia Element

Description

Sets a relationship to a Media object that defines the page setup and layout of the Index section. An Index always starts a new section, so you must select a Media object.

The PrintMedia element contains an integer which represents the Object ID of a Media object.

The PrintMedia element corresponds to the "Media" field on the Document tab of the Index object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	> 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<PrintMedia inherited="true">34</PrintMedia>
```

PrintRightAlign Element

Description

Determines if the page numbers in the Index of the Word document are right aligned.

The PrintRightAlign element corresponds to the "Right align page numbers" field on the Document tab of the Index object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintRightAlign inherited="true">false</PrintRightAlign>
```

PrintTitle Element

Description

Defines a title for the Index in the Word Document. This title has a "Heading 1" style automatically applied in the published Word document.

The PrintTitle element corresponds to the "Index Title" field on the Document tab of the Index object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<PrintTitle inherited="true">Index</PrintTitle>
```

HelpFromEntries Element

Description

Determines what entries Author-it will include in the index of the Help system. You can choose one or more options:

- ▶▶ **Index Entries** will include entries defined in the Index Contents.
- ▶▶ **Topic Heading** will include an entry for each Help Topic Heading.
- ▶▶ **Hot Spots** will include an entry for the referenced topic, at the point from where it is referenced.

The HelpFromEntries element corresponds to the "(Build index from) Index entries" field on the Windows Help tab of the Index object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpFromEntries inherited="true">true</HelpFromEntries>
```

HelpFromLinks Element

Description

Determines what entries Author-it will include in the index of the Help system. You can choose one or more options:

- ▶▶ **Index Entries** will include entries defined in the Index Contents.
- ▶▶ **Topic Heading** will include an entry for each Help Topic Heading.
- ▶▶ **Hot Spots** will include an entry for the referenced topic, at the point from where it is referenced.

The HelpFromEntries element corresponds to the "(Build index from) Index entries" field on the Windows Help tab of the Index object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpFromLinks inherited="true">true</HelpFromLinks>
```

HelpFromHeadings Element

Description

Determines what entries Author-it will include in the index of the Help system. You can choose one or more options:

- ▶▶ **Index Entries** will include entries defined in the Index Contents.
- ▶▶ **Topic Heading** will include an entry for each Help Topic Heading.
- ▶▶ **Hot Spots** will include an entry for the referenced topic, at the point from where it is referenced.

The HelpFromHeadings element corresponds to the "(Build index from) Index entries" field on the Windows Help tab of the Index object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpFromHeadings inherited="true">true</HelpFromHeadings>
```

Targets Element

Description

A list that allows you to set relationships to Topic objects, and other Index Entry objects that will be pointed to by this entry in your published index.

The Targets element corresponds to the field on the Entry Links tab of the Index Entry object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

IndexEntry

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
Relation	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<Targets>
- <Relation>
  <ID>3543</ID>
</Relation>
</Targets>
```

Relation Element

Description

The Relation element contains an ID element which represents an Author-it object to which the parent has a relationship.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

HelpMultiBookTargets, HyperLinksTargets, Targets

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
ID	No

Sample XML

```
<HyperLinksTargets>
- <Relation>
  <ID>3543</ID>
</Relation>
</HyperLinksTargets>
```

Relation Element

Description

The ID element is part of the relations structure, and contains a number which represents an Author-it object to which the parent has a relationship.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Relation

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0, an object id

Sample XML

```
<HyperLinksTargets>
- <Relation>
  <ID>3543</ID>
</Relation>
</HyperLinksTargets>
```

WebFromEntries Element

Description

Determines what entries Author-it will include in the HTML index page or HTML Help index. You can choose one or more options:

- ▶▶ **Index Entries** will include entries defined in the Index Contents.
- ▶▶ **Topic Heading** will include an entry for each HTML Topic Heading.
- ▶▶ **Hypertext Links** will include an entry for the referenced topic, at the point from where it is referenced.

The WebFromEntries element corresponds to the "(Build index from) Index entries" field on the HTML tab of the Index object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<WebFromEntries inherited="true">true</WebFromEntries>
<WebFromHeadings inherited="true">true</WebFromHeadings>
<WebFromLinks inherited="true">true</WebFromLinks>
```

WebFromHeadings Element

Description

Determines what entries Author-it will include in the HTML index page or HTML Help index. You can choose one or more options:

- ▶▶ **Index Entries** will include entries defined in the Index Contents.
- ▶▶ **Topic Heading** will include an entry for each HTML Topic Heading.
- ▶▶ **Hypertext Links** will include an entry for the referenced topic, at the point from where it is referenced.

The WebFromHeadings element corresponds to the "(Build index from) Topic headings" field on the HTML tab of the Index object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<WebFromHeadings inherited="true">true</WebFromHeadings>
```

WebFromLinks Element

Description

Determines what entries Author-it will include in the HTML index page or HTML Help index. You can choose one or more options:

- ▶▶ **Index Entries** will include entries defined in the Index Contents.
- ▶▶ **Topic Heading** will include an entry for each HTML Topic Heading.
- ▶▶ **Hypertext Links** will include an entry for the referenced topic, at the point from where it is referenced.

The WebFromLinks element corresponds to the "(Build index from) Hypertext links" field on the HTML tab of the Index object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<WebFromLinks inherited="true">true</WebFromLinks>
```

WebHHIndexTemplate Element

Description

Defines the HTML file to be used as the HTML Help index template. The default template "*hh_index.htm*" can be found in the *Templates/HTML Help* folder. Choose **Edit** to open and edit the selected template in Microsoft HTML Help Workshop.

The WebHHIndexTemplate element corresponds to the "(HTML Help) Template" field, on the Plain Help sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Index object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebHHIndexTemplate>Templates\hh_index.htm</WebHHIndexTemplate>
```

WebHHSitemapTemplate Element

Description

Default sitemap file to be used as the HTML Help index sitemap template. The default template "*index.hhk*" can be found in the *Templates/HTML Help* folder. Choose **Edit** to open and edit the selected template in Microsoft HTML Help Workshop.

The WebHHSitemapTemplate element corresponds to the "Sitemap template" field, on the HTML Help sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Index object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebHHSitemapTemplate>Templates\Index.hhk</WebHHSitemapTemplate>
```

WebIndexType Element

Description

What type of Index will be published:

- ▶▶ A plain HTML index page.

-or-

» An HTML Help index (requires the HTML Help ActiveX or Java Applet component).

Note: Make sure that the type of Table of Contents matches - either Plain HTML or HTML Help.

The WebIndexType element corresponds to the "Plain HTML/HTML Help" field, on the Plain HTML sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Index object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	1 or 2, where: 1 = Plain HTML 2 = HTML Help

Sample XML

```
<WebIndexType inherited="true">1</WebIndexType>
```

WebJHIndexTemplate Element

Description

Template file used when you publish your JavaHelp document output. The default template "*jh_index.xml*" can be found in the *Templates/JavaHelp* folder.

The WebJHIndexTemplate element corresponds to the "Index template" field, on the JavaHelp sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Index object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebOHIndexTemplate inherited="true">Templates
```

WebMedia Element

Description

Sets a relationship to a Media object that defines the HTML page setup of the Index page. An Index always starts a new HTML page, so you must select a Media object.

The WebMedia element corresponds to the "(Plain HTML) Media" field, on the Plain HTML sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Index object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	> 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<WebMedia inherited="true">34</WebMedia>
```

WebOHIndexTemplate Element

Description

Template file used when you publish your Oracle Help document output. The default template "*jh_index.xml*" can be found in the *Templates/JavaHelp* folder.

The WebOHIndexTemplate element corresponds to the "Index template" field, on the OracleHelp sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Index object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebOHIndexTemplate inherited="true">Templates
```

WebTitle Element

Description

Defines a title for the Index in the HTML pages. This title has a "Heading 1" style automatically applied in the published HTML. If a Style object with the same name exists, its CSS definition will be used.

The WebTitle element corresponds to the "Index title" field on the HTML tab of the Index object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Index

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebTitle inherited="true">Index</WebTitle>
```

IndexEntry Element



Description

An Index Entry object represents a single entry in an index. Each Index Entry object can contain relationships to a number of other objects. These entries can then be organized into a hierarchical outline in an Index object to represent the structure for that particular index.

The IndexEntry element represents an Author-it Index Entry object, and contains all of its properties.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Values</u>
wordcount	Yes	Integer	>= 0

Parent Element

Objects

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
Object	No
Targets	Yes
PrintEntryText	Yes
HelpEntryText	Yes
HelpMacro	Yes
WebEntryText	Yes

Sample XML

```

<IndexEntry>
+ <Object>
+ <Targets>
  - <Relation>
    <ID>594</ID>
  </Relation>
  - <Relation>
    <ID>180</ID>
  </Relation>
</Targets>
<PrintEntryText>Find</PrintEntryText>
<HelpEntryText>Find</HelpEntryText>
<HelpMacro inherited="true">0</HelpMacro>
<WebEntryText>Find</WebEntryText>
</IndexEntry>

```

Object Element**Description**

The Object element is used by all Author-it object types, and contains the properties that are common to all objects. In Author-it these properties can be found on the General tab of each object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Book, File, Glossary, Hyperlink, Index, IndexEntry, Macro, Media, Style, TableOfContents, TableOfFigures, TitlePage, Topic

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
BasedOn	Yes	Once
CreatedBy	Yes	Once
CreatedDate	Yes	Once
Description	No	Once
FolderID	Yes	Once
GUID	No	Once
ID	No	Once
IncludeInHelp	Yes	Once
IncludeInPrint	Yes	Once
IncludeInWeb	Yes	Once
IsTemplate	Yes	Once

Element	Optional	Occurs
Key	Yes	Once
LocalizationID	Yes	Once
ModifiedBy	Yes	Once
ModifiedDate	Yes	Once
ReleaseStateID	Yes	Once
Status	Yes	Once
Type	Yes	Once
Version	Yes	Once

Sample XML

```

<Object>
  <BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
  <CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
  <CreateDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreateDate>
  <Description>Using Notepad</Description>
  <FolderID>3</FolderID>
  <GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
  <ID>164</ID>
  <IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
  <IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
  <IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
  <IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
  <Key>164</Key>
  <LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
  <ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
  <ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
  <ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
  <Status>1</Status>
  <Type>Book</Type>
  <Version>1</Version>
</Object>

```

BasedOn Element

Description

Allows you to choose the template on which the object will be based. The names that appear in this list are derived from the Description property of an object template. The object templates that appear may depend on your security access.

The BasedOn element corresponds to the "Base this object on and inherit properties from template" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (A valid template object ID)

Sample XML

```
<BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
```

CreatedBy Element

Description

The CreatedBy element contains the user name of the person who created the object. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	1 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
```

CreatedDate Element

Description

The CreatedDate element contains the date that the object was created. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
```

Description Element

Description

Defines a descriptive name for the object. This description will be displayed as the name of the object throughout Author-it.

Note: You should enter a description that will make your objects easy to identify and find. In some object types, the description is copied to other properties when you first create the object. For example, in the Topic object the text is copied to the Print Heading, Help Heading, and the Web Heading properties.

The Description element corresponds to the "Description" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Description>Using Notepad</Description>
```

FolderID Element

Description

The FolderID element corresponds to the ID of the folder that the object is located in.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1 (A valid folder ID)

Sample XML

```
<FolderID>3</FolderID>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains a globally unique identifier.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
```

ID Element

Description

The ID element contains the object ID. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<ID>164</ID>
```

IncludeInHelp Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInHelp element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Windows Help" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
```

IncludeInPrint Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInPrint element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Word Document" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
```

IncludeInWeb Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInWeb element corresponds to the "(Include object in) HTML" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
```

IsTemplate Element

Description

Determines if this object is an object template. If you check this property, the object becomes a template.

Note: You can only set this property when the object is first created, and if you have the required security access.

The IsTemplate element corresponds to the "Make this object an object template" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IsTemplate>false</IsTemplate>
```

Key Element

Description

Unique identifier for the object, which you cannot change. This number can be used for linking topics when you're producing context-sensitive Help. The number does not change if you create versions of the object.

The Key element corresponds to the "Object code" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Key>164</Key>
```

LocalizationID Element

Description

The LocalizationID element is used with localization libraries to define which localization an object belongs to (e.g. what language the object is in).

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
```

ModifiedBy Element

Description

The ModifiedBy element contains the user name of the user who last updated the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
```

ModifiedDate Element

Description

The ModifiedDate element contains the date and time the the object was last updated. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
```

ReleaseStateID Element

Description

The ReleaseStateID element contains the ID of the release state of the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
```

Status Element

Description

A read-only text property that contains the current status of the version of the object. A version of an object can move through several different states during its life cycle.

This field is shown in the "Object status" field, on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 2, where: 0=Inactive 1=Active 2=Redundant

Sample XML

```
<Status>1</Status>
```

Type Element

Description

The Type element contains the object type of the object. This field contains a string which represents which type of object this is.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Type>Book</Type>
```

Version Element

Description

Contains a read-only unique version number for each version of an object. The Object Code will not change from one version of an object to another.

This field is displayed in the "Object version" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Version>1</Version>
```

Targets Element

Description

A list that allows you to set relationships to Topic objects, and other Index Entry objects that will be pointed to by this entry in your published index.

The Targets element corresponds to the field on the Entry Links tab of the Index Entry object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

IndexEntry

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
Relation	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<Targets>
- <Relation>
  <ID>3543</ID>
</Relation>
</Targets>
```

Relation Element

Description

The Relation element contains an ID element which represents an Author-it object to which the parent has a relationship.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

HelpMultiBookTargets, HyperLinksTargets, Targets

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
ID	No

Sample XML

```
<HyperLinksTargets>
- <Relation>
  <ID>3543</ID>
</Relation>
</HyperLinksTargets>
```

Relation Element**Description**

The ID element is part of the relations structure, and contains a number which represents an Author-it object to which the parent has a relationship.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Relation

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0, an object id

Sample XML

```
<HyperLinksTargets>
- <Relation>
  <ID>3543</ID>
</Relation>
</HyperLinksTargets>
```

PrintEntryText Element**Description**

Defines the actual text that will appear in the published Word index. The page numbers it references will be where the objects in the Entry Links List appear in the document.

Note: If another Index Entry object is found in the Entry Links List, that will create a "See" type reference in the Word index. For example, "Maintaining, See Changing".

The PrintEntryText element corresponds to the "Entry text" field on the Document tab of the Index Entry object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

IndexEntry

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<PrintEntryText>Find</PrintEntryText>
```

HelpEntryText Element

Description

Defines the actual text that will appear in the index tab of the published Windows Help. The topics it will jump to will be the objects in the Entry Links List.

Note: If another Index Entry object is found in the Entry Links List, then the jumps will be to the Topics contained in that Index Entry object.

The HelpEntryText element corresponds to the "Entry Text" field on the Windows Help tab of the Index Entry object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

IndexEntry

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<HelpEntryText>Find</HelpEntryText>
```

HelpMacro Element

Description

Sets a relationship to a Macro Procedure object that defines the Windows Help Macros that will be executed each time this entry is chosen from the Index tab of the help system.

The HelpMacro element corresponds to the "Macro" field on the Windows Help tab of the Index Entry object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

IndexEntry

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<HelpMacro inherited="true">190</HelpMacro>
```

WebEntryText element

Description

Defines the actual text that will appear in the HTML index page. The topics it will jump to will be the objects in the Entry Links List.

Note: If another Index Entry object is found in the Entry Links List, the jumps will be to the Topics contained in that Index Entry object.

The WebEntryText element corresponds to the "Entry text" field on the HTML tab of the Index Entry object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

IndexEntry

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebEntryText>Find</WebEntryText>
```

Macro Element



Description

The Windows 95/98 Help engine supports over 100 different help macros which can be executed from different points during the use of the Help. The Macro Procedure object is a Help only object and allows a series of macros to be defined in a single macro procedure. These can then be referenced by other objects, such as a Media object, to execute the macros at the required execution points.

The Macro element represents an Author-it Macro Procedure object, and contains all of its properties.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Values</u>
wordcount	Yes	Integer	>= 0

Parent Element

Objects

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
Object	No
HelpActions	Yes

Sample XML

```

<Macro>
+ <Object>
- <HelpActions>
  - <Action>
    <Name>CloseWindow</Name>
    <Parameters>Main</Parameters>
  </Action>
</HelpActions>
</Macro>

```

Object Element**Description**

The Object element is used by all Author-it object types, and contains the properties that are common to all objects. In Author-it these properties can be found on the General tab of each object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Book, File, Glossary, Hyperlink, Index, IndexEntry, Macro, Media, Style, TableOfContents, TableOfFigures, TitlePage, Topic

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
BasedOn	Yes	Once
CreatedBy	Yes	Once
CreatedDate	Yes	Once
Description	No	Once
FolderID	Yes	Once
GUID	No	Once
ID	No	Once
IncludeInHelp	Yes	Once
IncludeInPrint	Yes	Once
IncludeInWeb	Yes	Once
IsTemplate	Yes	Once
Key	Yes	Once
LocalizationID	Yes	Once
ModifiedBy	Yes	Once
ModifiedDate	Yes	Once

Element	Optional	Occurs
ReleaseStateID	Yes	Once
Status	Yes	Once
Type	Yes	Once
Version	Yes	Once

Sample XML

```

<Object>
  <BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
  <CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
  <CreateDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreateDate>
  <Description>Using Notepad</Description>
  <FolderID>3</FolderID>
  <GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
  <ID>164</ID>
  <IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
  <IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
  <IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
  <IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
  <Key>164</Key>
  <LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
  <ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
  <ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
  <ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
  <Status>1</Status>
  <Type>Book</Type>
  <Version>1</Version>
</Object>

```

BasedOn Element

Description

Allows you to choose the template on which the object will be based. The names that appear in this list are derived from the Description property of an object template. The object templates that appear may depend on your security access.

The BasedOn element corresponds to the "Base this object on and inherit properties from template" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (A valid template object ID)

Sample XML

```
<BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
```

CreatedBy Element

Description

The CreatedBy element contains the user name of the person who created the object. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	1 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
```

CreatedDate Element

Description

The CreatedDate element contains the date that the object was created. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
```

Description Element

Description

Defines a descriptive name for the object. This description will be displayed as the name of the object throughout Author-it.

Note: You should enter a description that will make your objects easy to identify and find. In some object types, the description is copied to other properties when you first create the object. For example, in the Topic object the text is copied to the Print Heading, Help Heading, and the Web Heading properties.

The Description element corresponds to the "Description" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Description>Using Notepad</Description>
```

FolderID Element

Description

The FolderID element corresponds to the ID of the folder that the object is located in.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1 (A valid folder ID)

Sample XML

```
<FolderID>3</FolderID>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains a globally unique identifier.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
```

ID Element**Description**

The ID element contains the object ID. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<ID>164</ID>
```

IncludeInHelp Element**Description**

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInHelp element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Windows Help" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
```

IncludeInPrint Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInPrint element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Word Document" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
```

IncludeInWeb Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInWeb element corresponds to the "(Include object in) HTML" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
```

IsTemplate Element

Description

Determines if this object is an object template. If you check this property, the object becomes a template.

Note: You can only set this property when the object is first created, and if you have the required security access.

The IsTemplate element corresponds to the "Make this object an object template" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
```

Key Element

Description

Unique identifier for the object, which you cannot change. This number can be used for linking topics when you're producing context-sensitive Help. The number does not change if you create versions of the object.

The Key element corresponds to the "Object code" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Key>164</Key>
```

LocalizationID Element

Description

The LocalizationID element is used with localization libraries to define which localization an object belongs to (e.g. what language the object is in).

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
```

ModifiedBy Element

Description

The ModifiedBy element contains the user name of the user who last updated the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
```

ModifiedDate Element

Description

The ModifiedDate element contains the date and time the the object was last updated. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

Data Type	Range
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
```

ReleaseStateID Element

Description

The ReleaseStateID element contains the ID of the release state of the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	≥ 0

Sample XML

```
<ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
```

Status Element

Description

A read-only text property that contains the current status of the version of the object. A version of an object can move through several different states during its life cycle.

This field is shown in the "Object status" field, on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 2, where: 0=Inactive 1=Active 2=Redundant

Sample XML

```
<Status>1</Status>
```

Type Element

Description

The Type element contains the object type of the object. This field contains a string which represents which type of object this is.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Type>Book</Type>
```

Version Element

Description

Contains a read-only unique version number for each version of an object. The Object Code will not change from one version of an object to another.

This field is displayed in the "Object version" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Version>1</Version>
```

HelpActions Element

Description

Contains a list of all the macro actions that will be executed when this Macro Procedure object is called.

The HelpActions element corresponds to the Action list field on the Windows Help tab of the Index Entry object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Macro

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
Action	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<HelpActions>
- <Action>
  <Name>CloseWindow</Name>
  <Parameters>Main</Parameters>
</Action>
</HelpActions>
```

Action Element

Description

The Action element is part of the HelpActions structure.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

HelpActions

Children

Element	Optional
Name	No
Parameters	No

Sample XML

```
<Action>  
  <Name>CloseWindow</Name>  
  <Parameters>Main</Parameters>  
</Action>
```

Name Element**Description**

The Name element contains the name of a macro.

This element corresponds to the Actions column of the Actions list on the Windows Help tab of the Macro Procedure object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Action

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Name>CloseWindow</Name>
```

Parameters Element

Description

The Parameters element contains a comma separated list of parameters.

This Parameters element corresponds to the Parameters column of the Actions list on the Windows Help tab of the Macro Procedure object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Action

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long. A comma separated list of parameters.

Sample XML

```
<Parameters>Main</Parameters>
```

Media Element

Description



The Media object defines the media on which the printed or on-line documentation is rendered. It defines the page layout in the printed documentation, the Help Windows in the Help and the HTML page in HTML. These objects can then be referenced by other objects, such as Topics, Glossaries, or Indexes to define what Media they will use.

The Media element represents an Author-it Media object, and contains all of its properties.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type	Values
wordcount	Yes	Integer	>= 0

Parent Element

Objects

Children

Element	Optional
Object	No
PrintDifferentFirst	Yes
PrintDifferentOddEven	Yes
PrintEvenFooter	Yes
PrintEvenHeader	Yes
PrintFirstFooter	Yes
PrintFirstHeader	Yes
PrintMarginBottom	Yes
PrintMarginFooter	Yes
PrintMarginGutter	Yes
PrintMarginHeader	Yes
PrintMarginLeft	Yes
PrintMarginRight	Yes
PrintMarginTop	Yes
PrintMirrorMargins	Yes
PrintNumColumns	Yes
PrintOddFooter	Yes
PrintOddHeader	Yes
PrintOrientation	Yes
PrintPageNumberFormat	Yes
PrintPageNumberStartFrom	Yes

Element	Optional
PrintPageNumberStartType	Yes
PrintPaperSize	Yes
PrintSectionStart	Yes
PrintSizeHeight	Yes
PrintSizeWidth	Yes
HelpAutoSize	Yes
HelpBack	Yes
HelpBrowse	Yes
HelpColourHeading	Yes
HelpColourTopic	Yes
HelpContents	Yes
HelpFind	Yes
HelpHeight	Yes
HelpIndex	Yes
HelpKeepOnTop	Yes
HelpLeft	Yes
HelpMacro	Yes
HelpMaximise	Yes
HelpOptions	Yes
HelpPrintTopic	Yes
HelpTitle	Yes
HelpTop	Yes
HelpTopics	Yes
HelpWidth	Yes
HelpWindowName	Yes
WebALinkColour	Yes
WebAdditionalFiles	Yes
WebBackColour	Yes
WebBackImage	Yes
WebBackImageNonScrolling	Yes
WebBackSound	Yes
WebBackSoundRepeat	Yes
WebMetaData	Yes
WebLinkColour	Yes
WebTemplate	Yes

Element	Optional
WebTextColour	Yes
WebTitle	Yes
WebVLinkColour	Yes

Sample XML

```
<Media>
+ <Object>
  <PrintDifferentFirst>true</PrintDifferentFirst>
  <PrintDifferentOddEven>true</PrintDifferentOddEven>
  <PrintEvenFooter>(none)</PrintEvenFooter>
  <PrintEvenHeader>HeaderEven</PrintEvenHeader>
  <PrintFirstFooter>(none)</PrintFirstFooter>
  <PrintFirstHeader>HeaderFirst</PrintFirstHeader>
  <PrintMarginBottom inherited="true">2.5</PrintMarginBottom>
  <PrintMarginFooter inherited="true">1.75</PrintMarginFooter>
  <PrintMarginGutter>0</PrintMarginGutter>
  <PrintMarginHeader inherited="true">1.75</PrintMarginHeader>
  <PrintMarginLeft>7</PrintMarginLeft>
  <PrintMarginRight inherited="true">2.5</PrintMarginRight>
  <PrintMarginTop inherited="true">2.5</PrintMarginTop>
  <PrintMirrorMargins inherited="true">>false</PrintMirrorMargins>
  <PrintNumColumns>1</PrintNumColumns>
  <PrintOddFooter>(none)</PrintOddFooter>
  <PrintOddHeader>HeaderOdd</PrintOddHeader>
  <PrintOrientation inherited="true">1</PrintOrientation>
  <PrintPageNumberFormat>0</PrintPageNumberFormat>
  <PrintPageNumberStartFrom
inherited="true">1</PrintPageNumberStartFrom>
  <PrintPageNumberStartType>1</PrintPageNumberStartType>
  <PrintPaperSize inherited="true">5</PrintPaperSize>
  <PrintSectionStart>4</PrintSectionStart>
  <PrintSizeHeight inherited="true">29.7</PrintSizeHeight>
  <PrintSizeWidth inherited="true">21</PrintSizeWidth>
  <HelpAutoSize>>false</HelpAutoSize>
  <HelpBack>true</HelpBack>
  <HelpBrowse>true</HelpBrowse>
  <HelpColourHeading>16777215</HelpColourHeading>
  <HelpColourTopic>16777215</HelpColourTopic>
  <HelpContents>true</HelpContents>
  <HelpFind>true</HelpFind>
  <HelpHeight>-1</HelpHeight>
  <HelpIndex>true</HelpIndex>
  <HelpKeepOnTop>true</HelpKeepOnTop>
  <HelpLeft>-1</HelpLeft>
  <HelpMacro>0</HelpMacro>
  <HelpMaximise>true</HelpMaximise>
  <HelpOptions>true</HelpOptions>
  <HelpPrintTopic>true</HelpPrintTopic>
  <HelpTitle />
  <HelpTop>-1</HelpTop>
  <HelpTopics>true</HelpTopics>
  <HelpWidth>-1</HelpWidth>
  <HelpWindowName>Normal</HelpWindowName>
  <WebALinkColour inherited="true">255</WebALinkColour>
  <WebAdditionalFiles />
  <WebBackColour>16777215</WebBackColour>
  <WebBackImage />
  <WebBackImageNonScrolling>false</WebBackImageNonScrolling>
  <WebBackSound />
  <WebBackSoundRepeat>false</WebBackSoundRepeat>
  <WebMetaData />
  <WebLinkColour inherited="true">8404992</WebLinkColour>
  <WebTemplate>..\Templates\CGI_FTS\main_template.htm</WebTemplate>
  <WebTextColour inherited="true">0</WebTextColour>
  <WebTitle />
  <WebVLinkColour inherited="true">255</WebVLinkColour>
</Media>
```

Object Element

Description

The Object element is used by all Author-it object types, and contains the properties that are common to all objects. In Author-it these properties can be found on the General tab of each object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Book, File, Glossary, Hyperlink, Index, IndexEntry, Macro, Media, Style, TableOfContents, TableOfFigures, TitlePage, Topic

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
BasedOn	Yes	Once
CreatedBy	Yes	Once
CreatedDate	Yes	Once
Description	No	Once
FolderID	Yes	Once
GUID	No	Once
ID	No	Once
IncludelnHelp	Yes	Once
IncludelnPrint	Yes	Once
IncludelnWeb	Yes	Once
IsTemplate	Yes	Once
Key	Yes	Once
LocalizationID	Yes	Once
ModifiedBy	Yes	Once
ModifiedDate	Yes	Once
ReleaseStateID	Yes	Once
Status	Yes	Once
Type	Yes	Once
Version	Yes	Once

Sample XML

```
<Object>
  <BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
  <CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
  <CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
  <Description>Using Notepad</Description>
  <FolderID>3</FolderID>
  <GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
  <ID>164</ID>
  <IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
  <IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
  <IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
  <IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
  <Key>164</Key>
  <LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
  <ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
  <ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
  <ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
  <Status>1</Status>
  <Type>Book</Type>
  <Version>1</Version>
</Object>
```

BasedOn Element

Description

Allows you to choose the template on which the object will be based. The names that appear in this list are derived from the Description property of an object template. The object templates that appear may depend on your security access.

The BasedOn element corresponds to the "Base this object on and inherit properties from template" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (A valid template object ID)

Sample XML

```
<BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
```

CreatedBy Element

Description

The CreatedBy element contains the user name of the person who created the object. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	1 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
```

CreateDate Element

Description

The CreateDate element contains the date that the object was created. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<CreateDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreateDate>
```

Description Element

Description

Defines a descriptive name for the object. This description will be displayed as the name of the object throughout Author-it.

Note: You should enter a description that will make your objects easy to identify and find. In some object types, the description is copied to other properties when you first create the object. For example, in the Topic object the text is copied to the Print Heading, Help Heading, and the Web Heading properties.

The Description element corresponds to the "Description" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Description>Using Notepad</Description>
```

FolderID Element

Description

The FolderID element corresponds to the ID of the folder that the object is located in.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1 (A valid folder ID)

Sample XML

```
<FolderID>3</FolderID>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains a globally unique identifier.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
```

ID Element

Description

The ID element contains the object ID. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<ID>164</ID>
```

IncludeInHelp Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInHelp element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Windows Help" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
```

IncludeInPrint Element**Description**

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInPrint element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Word Document" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
```

IncludeInWeb Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInWeb element corresponds to the "(Include object in) HTML" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
```

IsTemplate Element

Description

Determines if this object is an object template. If you check this property, the object becomes a template.

Note: You can only set this property when the object is first created, and if you have the required security access.

The IsTemplate element corresponds to the "Make this object an object template" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
```

Key Element

Description

Unique identifier for the object, which you cannot change. This number can be used for linking topics when you're producing context-sensitive Help. The number does not change if you create versions of the object.

The Key element corresponds to the "Object code" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Key>164</Key>
```

LocalizationID Element

Description

The LocalizationID element is used with localization libraries to define which localization an object belongs to (e.g. what language the object is in).

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
```

ModifiedBy Element

Description

The ModifiedBy element contains the user name of the user who last updated the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
```

ModifiedDate Element

Description

The ModifiedDate element contains the date and time the the object was last updated. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
```

ReleaseStateID Element

Description

The ReleaseStateID element contains the ID of the release state of the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
```

Status Element

Description

A read-only text property that contains the current status of the version of the object. A version of an object can move through several different states during its life cycle.

This field is shown in the "Object status" field, on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 2, where: 0=Inactive 1=Active 2=Redundant

Sample XML

```
<Status>1</Status>
```

Type Element

Description

The Type element contains the object type of the object. This field contains a string which represents which type of object this is.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Type>Book</Type>
```

Version Element

Description

Contains a read-only unique version number for each version of an object. The Object Code will not change from one version of an object to another.

This field is displayed in the "Object version" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Version>1</Version>
```

PrintDifferentFirst Element

Description

Determines if the new section will have a different header and footer on the first page.

The PrintDifferentFirst element corresponds to the "(Headers and Footers) Different first page" field on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintDifferentFirst>true</PrintDifferentFirst>
```

PrintDifferentOddEven Element

Description

Determines if the new section will have different headers and footers on odd and even pages.

The PrintDifferentOddEven element corresponds to the "(Headers and Footers) Different odd and even" field on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintDifferentOddEven>true</PrintDifferentOddEven>
```

PrintEvenFooter element

Description

Allows you to choose a Footer for the First, Odd, and Even pages of the section, depending on your selection of the Different First, and Different Odd and Even properties. You can choose from the list of valid Footers.

The PrintEvenFooter element corresponds to the "Even" field, on the Footers sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 50 characters long. Either "(none)", or a valid footer name.

Sample XML

```
<PrintEvenFooter>(none)</PrintEvenFooter>
```

PrintEvenHeader Element

Description

Allows you to choose a Header for the First, Odd, and Even pages of the section, depending on your selection of the Different First, and Different Odd and Even properties. You can choose from the list of valid Headers.

The PrintEvenHeader element corresponds to the "Even" field, on the Header sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 50 characters long. Either "(none)" or a valid header name.

Sample XML

```
<PrintEvenHeader>HeaderEven</PrintEvenHeader>
```

PrintFirstFooter element

Description

Allows you to choose a Footer for the First, Odd, and Even pages of the section, depending on your selection of the Different First, and Different Odd and Even properties. You can choose from the list of valid Footers.

The PrintFirstFooter element corresponds to the "Even" field, on the Footers sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 50 characters long. Either "(none)", or a valid footer name.

Sample XML

```
<PrintFirstFooter>(none)</PrintFirstFooter>
```

PrintFirstHeader Element

Description

Allows you to choose a Header for the First, Odd, and Even pages of the section, depending on your selection of the Different First, and Different Odd and Even properties. You can choose from the list of valid Headers.

The PrintFirstHeader element corresponds to the "First" field, on the Header sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 50 characters long. Either "(none)" or a valid header name.

Sample XML

```
<PrintFirstHeader>HeaderFirst</PrintFirstHeader>
```

PrintMarginBottom Element

Description

Defines the distance in centimeters (cm) from the edge of the page to the Top, Bottom, Left, or Right margins of the document. The text of the document will be within these margins.

The PrintMarginBottom element corresponds to the "Bottom" field, on the Margins sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Decimal	0.01 to 55.87

Sample XML

```
<PrintMarginBottom inherited="true">2.5</PrintMarginBottom>
```

PrintMarginFooter Element

Description

Defines the distance from the bottom edge of the page to the footer. The distance is measured from the edge of the page to the bottom edge of the footer.

The PrintMarginFooter element corresponds to the "Footer" field, on the Margins sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Decimal	0.01 to 55.87

Sample XML

```
<PrintMarginFooter inherited="true">1.75</PrintMarginFooter>
```

PrintMarginGutter Element

Description

Defines the amount of extra space you want to add to the margins to allow for binding. The extra space is added to the left margin of all pages if you clear the Mirror Margins property, or to the inside margin of all pages if you set the Mirror Margins property on.

The PrintMarginGutter element corresponds to the "Gutter" field, on the Margins sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Decimal	0 to 55.87

Sample XML

```
<PrintMarginGutter>0</PrintMarginGutter>
```

PrintMarginHeader Element

Description

Defines the distance from the top edge of the page to the header. The distance is measured from the edge of the page to the top edge of the header.

The PrintMarginHeader element corresponds to the "Header" field, on the Margins sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
Decimal	0.01 to 55.87

Sample XML

```
<PrintMarginHeader inherited="true">1.75</PrintMarginHeader>
```

PrintMarginLeft Element

Description

Defines the distance in centimeters (cm) from the edge of the page to the Top, Bottom, Left, or Right margins of the document. The text of the document will be within these margins.

The PrintMarginLeft element corresponds to the "Left" field, on the Margins sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Decimal	0.01 to 55.87

Sample XML

```
<PrintMarginLeft>7</PrintMarginLeft>
```

PrintMarginRight Element

Description

Defines the distance in centimeters (cm) from the edge of the page to the Top, Bottom, Left, or Right margins of the document. The text of the document will be within these margins.

The PrintMarginRight element corresponds to the "Right" field, on the Margins sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Decimal	0.01 to 55.87

Sample XML

```
<PrintMarginRight inherited="true">2.5</PrintMarginRight>
```

PrintMarginTop Element

Description

Defines the distance in centimeters (cm) from the edge of the page to the Top, Bottom, Left, or Right margins of the document. The text of the document will be within these margins.

The PrintMarginTop element corresponds to the "Top" field, on the Margins sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Decimal	0.01 to 55.87

Sample XML

```
<PrintMarginTop inherited="true">2.5</PrintMarginTop>
```

PrintMirrorMargins Element

Description

Determines if the inside margins of facing pages are the same width and the outside margins are the same width. This is used for double-sided printing.

The PrintMirrorMargins element corresponds to the "Mirror margins" field, on the Margins sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintMirrorMargins inherited="true">false</PrintMirrorMargins>
```

PrintNumColumns Element

Description

Defines the number of columns in this section. You can have between 1 and 3 columns.

The PrintNumColumns element corresponds to the "Number of columns" field on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1 to 3

Sample XML

```
<PrintNumColumns>1</PrintNumColumns>
```

PrintOddFooter element

Description

Allows you to choose a Footer for the First, Odd, and Even pages of the section, depending on your selection of the Different First, and Different Odd and Even properties. You can choose from the list of valid Footers.

The PrintOddFooter element corresponds to the "Odd" field, on the Footers sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 50 characters long. Either "(none)", or a valid footer name.

Sample XML

```
<PrintOddFooter>(none)</PrintOddFooter>
```

PrintOddHeader Element

Description

Allows you to choose a Header for the First, Odd, and Even pages of the section, depending on your selection of the Different First, and Different Odd and Even properties. You can choose from the list of valid Headers.

The PrintOddHeader element corresponds to the "Odd" field, on the Header sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 50 characters long. Either "(none)" or a valid header name.

Sample XML

```
<PrintOddHeader>HeaderOdd</PrintOddHeader>
```

PrintOrientation Element

Description

Allows you to choose the orientation of the page for the section:

- ▶▶ **Landscape** when the long edge of the paper is horizontal.
- ▶▶ **Portrait** when the long edge of the paper is vertical.

The PrintOrientation element corresponds to the "Orientation" field, on the Paper Size sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	1 or 2, where: 1 = Portrait 2 = Landscape

Sample XML

```
<PrintOrientation inherited="true">1</PrintOrientation>
```

PrintPageNumberFormat Element

Description

Allows you to choose the format of the page numbering for the section.

The PrintPageNumberFormat element corresponds to the "Page number format" field, on the Page Numbering sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 4, where: 0 = 1,2,3 ... 1 = a,b,c ... 2 = A,B,C ... 3 = i,ii,iii ... 4 = I,II,III ...

Sample XML

```
<PrintPageNumberFormat>0</PrintPageNumberFormat>
```

PrintPageNumberStartFrom Element

Description

Allows you to choose between continuing the page numbering from the previous section, or starting the numbering at a specific number. If you choose Start At, you can enter a number for the first page of the section to start numbering from.

The PrintPageNumberStartFrom element corresponds to the "Start at" field, on the Page Numbering sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	1 to 999

Sample XML

```
<PrintPageNumberStartFrom inherited="true">1</PrintPageNumberStartFrom>
```

PrintPageNumberStartType Element

Description

Allows you to choose between continuing the page numbering from the previous section, or starting the numbering at a specific number. If you choose Start At, you can enter a number for the first page of the section to start numbering from.

The PrintPageNumberStartType element corresponds to the radio buttons, on the Page Numbering sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	1 or 2, where: 1 = Continue from previous 2 = Start at:

Sample XML

```
<PrintPageNumberStartType>1</PrintPageNumberStartType>
```

PrintPaperSize Element

Description

Allows you to choose from a list of standard paper sizes that will define the size of the paper for the section. If the desired size is not available, then you can choose "(custom)" and enter your own dimensions.

The PrintPaperSize element corresponds to the "Page size" field, on the Paper Size sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 6, where: 0 = (custom) 1 = Letter (8 ½ x 11 in) 2 = Legal (8 ½ x 14 in) 3 = Executive (7 ¼ x 10½ in) 4 = A3 (297 x 420 mm) 5 = A4 (210 x 297 mm) 6 = A5 (148 x 210 mm)

Sample XML

```
<PrintPaperSize inherited="true">5</PrintPaperSize>
```

PrintSectionStart Element

Description

Allows you to choose how the new section in the Word document will start.

The PrintSectionStart element corresponds to the "Section start" field, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 4, where: 0 = Continuous 1 = New Column 2 = Next page 3 = Even page 4 = Odd page

Sample XML

```
<PrintSectionStart>4</PrintSectionStart>
```

PrintSizeHeight Element

Description

Defines the height of the page in centimeters. You can only change this property if you have selected "(custom)" for the Page Size property.

The PrintSizeHeight element corresponds to the "Height" field, on the Paper Size sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Decimal	0.26 to 55.87

Sample XML

```
<PrintSizeHeight inherited="true">29.7</PrintSizeHeight>
```

PrintSizeWidth Element

Description

Defines the width of the page in centimeters. You can only change this property if you have selected "(custom)" for the Page Size property.

The PrintSizeWidth element corresponds to the "Width" field, on the Paper Size sub-tab, on the Document tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
Decimal	0.26 to 55.87

Sample XML

```
<PrintSizeWidth inherited="true">21</PrintSizeWidth>
```

HelpAutoSize Element

Description

Determines if the height of the help window changes automatically to accommodate the amount of text in it. The Help window with a Window Name of "main" cannot be automatically sized.

The HelpAutoSize element corresponds to the "Auto-size height" field, on the Attribute sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpAutoSize>false</HelpAutoSize>
```

HelpBack Element

Description

Determines if a **Back** button appears on the button bar in the help window. The Back button displays the previously viewed topic in the current window.

The HelpBack element corresponds to the "Back" field, on the Buttons sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpBack>true</HelpBack>
```

HelpBrowse Element

Description

Determines if a pair of browse buttons, << and >> appear on the button bar in the help window. The browse buttons enable users to move from one topic to another, as specified by Include in Browse Sequence, and Start a New Browse Sequence properties of the Topic object.

The HelpBrowse element corresponds to the "Browse" field, on the Buttons sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpBrowse>true</HelpBrowse>
```

HelpColourHeading Element

Description

Defines the color of the non-scrolling area of the help window. The Help Heading will be displayed in this area if the Non-Scrolling property is set on.

Choose the **Change** button to change the color.

The HelpColourHeading element corresponds to the "Non-scrolling area color" field, on the Color sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 16777215. A valid color.

Sample XML

```
<HelpColourHeading>16777215</HelpColourHeading>
```

HelpColourTopic Element

Description

Defines the color of the scrolling area of the help window. The Topic Text will be displayed in this area of the help window.

Choose the **Change** button to change the color.

The HelpColourTopic element corresponds to the "Topic area color" field, on the Color sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 16777215. A valid color.

Sample XML

```
<HelpColourTopic>16777215</HelpColourTopic>
```

HelpContents Element

Description

Determines if a **Contents** button appears on the button bar in the help window. If a contents (.cnt) file is present, the Contents button displays the Contents tab in the Help Topics dialog box. Otherwise, the Contents button displays either the default topic or the first topic in your help file.

The HelpContents element corresponds to the "Contents" field, on the Buttons sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpContents>true</HelpContents>
```

HelpFind Element

Description

Determines if a **Find** button appears on the button bar in the help window. The Find button displays the **Find** tab in the Help Topics dialog box.

The HelpFind element corresponds to the "Find" field, on the Buttons sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpFind>true</HelpFind>
```

HelpHeight Element

Description

Defines the size of the help window in pixels, as the height and width from the top left hand corner of the window. A value of -1 means that the Windows Help default position will be used.

The HelpHeight element corresponds to the "Height" field, on the Position sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	-1 to 1024 (pixels), where: -1 = use default

Sample XML

```
<HelpHeight>-1</HelpHeight>
```

HelpIndex Element

Description

Determines if an **Index** button appears on the button bar in the help window. The Index button displays the Index tab in the Help Topics dialog box.

The HelpIndex element corresponds to the "Index" field, on the Buttons sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpIndex>true</HelpIndex>
```

HelpKeepOnTop Element

Description

Determines if the help window remains in the foreground, even when users switch to a different window or program. This feature is especially useful for procedures because the Help topic remains visible while the user carries out a task.

The HelpKeepOnTop element corresponds to the "Keep window on top" field, on the Attributes sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpKeepOnTop>true</HelpKeepOnTop>
```

HelpLeft Element

Description

Defines the position of the top left hand corner of the help window, as the number of pixels from the top left hand corner of the screen. A value of -1 means that the Windows Help default position will be used.

The HelpLeft element corresponds to the "Left" field, on the Position sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	-1 to 1024 (pixels), where: -1 = use default

Sample XML

```
<HelpLeft>-1</HelpLeft>
```

HelpMacro Element

Description

Sets a relationship to a Macro Procedure object that defines the Windows Help Macros that will be executed when the window opens for the first time.

The HelpMacro element corresponds to the "Macro" field, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0. A valid Macro Object ID

Sample XML

```
<HelpMacro>0</HelpMacro>
```

HelpMaximise Element

Description

Determines if the help window covers a user's entire screen. This property and the Auto-Size Height property cannot be set to on at the same time.

The HelpMaximise element corresponds to the "Maximize window" field, on the Attributes sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpMaximise>true</HelpMaximise>
```

HelpOptions Element

Description

Determines if an **Options** button appears on the button bar in the help window. The Options button displays a menu containing the following commands:

- » Annotate
- » Copy
- » Print Topic
- » Font
- » Keep Help On Top
- » Use System Colors

This menu also appears when users click a topic using the right mouse button.

The HelpOptions element corresponds to the "Options" field, on the Buttons sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpOptions>true</HelpOptions>
```

HelpPrintTopic Element

Description

Determines if a **Print** button appears on the button bar in the help window. The Print button prints the current topic.

The HelpPrintTopic element corresponds to the "Print" field, on the Buttons sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpPrintTopic>true</HelpPrintTopic>
```

HelpTitle Element

Description

Defines the text that will appear in the title bar of this Help window. If you do not specify the window title, the Help Title from the Book object will be used.

The HelpTitle element corresponds to the "Window title" field, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<HelpTitle>AuthorIT Help</HelpTitle>
```

HelpTop Element

Description

Defines the position of the top left hand corner of the help window, as the number of pixels from the top left hand corner of the screen. A value of -1 means that the Windows Help default position will be used.

The HelpTop element corresponds to the "Top" field, on the Position sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	-1 to 1024 (pixels), where: -1 = use default

Sample XML

```
<HelpTop>-1</HelpTop>
```

HelpTopics Element

Description

Determines if a **Help Topics** button appears on the button bar in the help window. If a contents (.cnt) file is present, clicking the Help Topics button for the first time displays the Contents tab in the Help Topics dialog box. Thereafter, clicking the Help Topics button displays the tab that a user most recently worked with.

If there is no contents file, the Help Topics button displays either the default topic or the first topic in your help file.

The HelpTopics element corresponds to the "HelpTopics" field, on the Buttons sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpTopics>true</HelpTopics>
```

HelpWidth Element

Description

Defines the size of the help window in pixels, as the height and width from the top left hand corner of the window. A value of -1 means that the Windows Help default position will be used.

The HelpWidth element corresponds to the "Width" field, on the Position sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	-1 to 1024 (pixels), where: -1 = use default

Sample XML

```
<HelpWidth>300</HelpWidth>
```

HelpWindowName Element

Description

Defines the name of the help window. This name can be used when building a Macro Procedure object, to specify a help window. This name is mandatory and must be unique.

The HelpWindowName element corresponds to the "Window name" field, on the Windows Help tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<HelpWindowName>Normal</HelpWindowName>
```

WebALinkColour Element

Description

Defines the color of the hypertext link currently being selected on the HTML page.

The WebALinkColour element corresponds to the "Active" field, on the Text Colors sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 16777215, where: 0 = black 16777215 = white

Sample XML

```
<WebALinkColour inherited="true">255</WebALinkColour>
```

WebAdditionalFiles Element

Description

Specifies a list of additional files required to support the HTML Template. These can be any files that are referenced by the HTML Template, such as a graphic. Author-it copies all files specified to the Publishing folder when publishing HTML or HTML based Help. An error is displayed if any of these files cannot be found. Relative or fixed paths are supported.

The WebAdditionalFiles element corresponds to the "Specify any additional files required" field, on the HTML tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
AdditionalFile	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<WebAdditionalFiles inherited="true">
  <AdditionalFile>
    <Filename>..\Templates\Plain HTML\contents1.gif</Filename>
  </AdditionalFile>
</WebAdditionalFiles>
```

AdditionalFile Element

Description

The AdditionalFile element is part of the WebAdditionalFiles structure.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

WebAdditionalFiles

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
Filename	No	Once

Sample XML

```
<WebAdditionalFiles inherited="true">
  <AdditionalFile>
    <Filename>..\Templates\Plain HTML\contents1.gif</Filename>
  </AdditionalFile>
</WebAdditionalFiles>
```

Filename Element

Description

The Filename element is part of the WebAdditionalFiles structure. This element contains a filename, including the file path. The filename may be relative or absolute, local or network.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

AdditionalFile

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 4000 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebAdditionalFiles inherited="true">
  <AdditionalFile>
    <Filename>..\Templates\Plain HTML\contents1.gif</Filename>
  </AdditionalFile>
</WebAdditionalFiles>
```

WebBackColour Element

Description

Defines the background color of the HTML page.

Note: If a Background Image is defined and it cannot be displayed, this color will be used. For this reason, the Background color should be carefully chosen to match the intended background image.

The WebBackColour element corresponds to the "Color" field, on the Background sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 16777215, where: 0 = black 16777215 = white

Sample XML

<WebBackColour>16777215</WebBackColour>

WebBackImage Element

Description

Defines a link to an image file which is used as the (tiled) background of the HTML page. This property supports relative folders.

The WebBackImage element corresponds to the "Image" field, on the Background sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

<WebBackImage>graphics\back163.gif</WebBackImage>

WebBackImageNonScrolling Element

Description

Determines if the Background Image will be non-scrolling. If this property is selected the background image will not scroll with the text of the page.

The WebBackImageNonScrolling element corresponds to the "Non-scrolling" field, on the Background sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<WebBackImageNonScrolling>false</WebBackImageNonScrolling>
```

WebBackSound Element

Description

Defines a link to a WAV sound file (.wav) that will play in the background when the HTML page is opened. This property supports relative folders.

The WebBackSound element corresponds to the "Sound" field, on the Background sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

`<WebBackSound>fanfare.wav</WebBackSound>`

WebBackSoundRepeat Element

Description

Determines if the Background Sound will replay continuously while the HTML page is open.

The WebBackSoundRepeat element corresponds to the "Auto-replay" field, on the Background sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

`<WebBackSoundRepeat>false</WebBackSoundRepeat>`

WebMetaData Element

Description

Shows a list of meta data for this HTML page. Each entry will create a <META> tag, which is used to convey meta-information about the document.

Choose the **Add** button to add a new entry, or the **Remove** button to delete the selected entry.

The WebMetaData element corresponds to the "Meta Data" list, on the Meta Data sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Media object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Media

Children

<u>Name</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
MetaDatum	Zero to many

Sample XML

```
<WebMetaData>
  <MetaDatum>
    <Name>author</Name>
    <Content>Joe Bloggs</Content>
  </MetaDatum>
</WebMetaData>
```

MetaDataItem Element

Description

Represents one item in the MetaDataItem structure.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

WebMetaData

Children

<u>Name</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
Name	Once
Content	Once

Sample XML

```
<MetaDataItem>
  <Name>author</Name>
  <Content>Joe Bloggs</Content>
</MetaDataItem>
```

Name Element

Description

Defines the name of the selected item in the Meta Data List. Prefix the Name property of your meta data with an exclamation mark (!) to use the HTTP-EQUIV instead of the NAME attribute.

The Name element represents the name of a meta data item.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

MetaDataItem

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Name>author</Name>
```

Content Element**Description**

Defines the content of the selected item in the Meta Data List.

The Content element represents the content of a meta data item.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

MetaDataItem

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Content>Joe Bloggs</Content>
```

WebLinkColour Element**Description**

Defines the color of the unvisited hypertext links on the HTML page.

Note: Do not set Unvisited Links Color, and Visited Links Color to the same color, it will confuse visitors.

The WebLinkColour element corresponds to the "Unvisited" field, on the Text Colors sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 16777215, where: 0 = black 16777215 = white

Sample XML

```
<WebLinkColour inherited="true">8404992</WebLinkColour>
```

WebTemplate Element

Description

Specifies the file name and path of the precoded HTML template. Must be a valid HTML file with the <aitdata> place holder. If specified, this will be used instead of Author-it creating its own page.

The WebTemplate element corresponds to the "Use this HTML template instead of settings below" field, on the HTML tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebTemplate>..\Templates\CGI_FTS\main_template.htm</WebTemplate>
```

WebTextColour Element

Description

Defines the default color of the normal body text on the HTML page.

The WebTextColour element corresponds to the "Body text" field, on the Text Colors sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 16777215, where: 0 = black 16777215 = white

Sample XML

```
<WebTextColour inherited="true">0</WebTextColour>
```

WebTitle Element

Description

Defines the text that will be used for the title of the HTML page. Every HTML page must have a title which may be displayed in the title bar of the Browser. If you do not specify the title, the HTML Title from the Book object will be used.

The WebTitle element corresponds to the "Title" field, on the HTML tab of the Media object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebTitle>Contents</WebTitle>
```

WebVLinkColour Element

Description

Defines the color of the visited hypertext links on the HTML page.

Note: Do not set Unvisited Links Color, and Visited Links Color to the same color, it will confuse visitors.

The WebVLinkColour element corresponds to the "Visited" field, on the Text Colors sub-tab, on the HTML tab of the Media object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Media

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 16777215, where: 0 = black 16777215 = white

Sample XML

```
<WebVLinkColour inherited="true">255</WebVLinkColour>
```

Style Element



Description

A Style object represents the formatting and layout of characters or paragraphs within the text of a Topic object in the Author-it editing environment. All text within a Topic object must be tagged with a Style object. This ensures a consistent and manageable look and feel to all documentation.

The Style object also contains a link to a style in a Microsoft Word Template for the printed documentation, a definition for how the same style will be represented in the Windows Help, and a definition for a Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) style in HTML.

The Style element represents an Author-it Style object, and contains all of its properties.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Values</u>
wordcount	Yes	Integer	>= 0

Parent Element

Objects

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
Object	No
BorderBottom	Yes
BorderLeft	Yes
BorderRight	Yes
BorderStyle	Yes
BorderShadow	Yes
BorderTop	Yes
Bullet	Yes
FontBold	Yes
FontColour	Yes
FontItalics	Yes
FontName	Yes
FontSize	Yes
FontUnderline	Yes
FontSubscript	Yes
FontSuperscript	Yes
Number	Yes
Numbering	Yes
NumberStart	Yes

Element	Optional
OutlineLevel	Yes
ParaAfter	Yes
ParaAlignment	Yes
ParaBefore	Yes
ParaFirstLine	Yes
ParaLeft	Yes
ParaLineSpacing	Yes
ParaRight	Yes
StyleName	Yes
StyleType	Yes
TabDefault	Yes
Tabs	No
PrintStyleName	Yes
HelpBorderBottom	Yes
HelpBorderLeft	Yes
HelpBorderRight	Yes
HelpBorderShadow	Yes
HelpBorderStyle	Yes
HelpBorderTop	Yes
HelpBullet	Yes
HelpFontBold	Yes
HelpFontColour	Yes
HelpFontItalics	Yes
HelpFontName	Yes
HelpFontSize	Yes
HelpNonWrapping	Yes
HelpNumber	Yes
HelpNumbering	Yes
HelpNumberStart	Yes
HelpParaAfter	Yes
HelpParaAlignment	Yes
HelpParaBefore	Yes
HelpParaFirstLine	Yes
HelpParaLeft	Yes
HelpParaLineSpacing	Yes

Element	Optional
HelpParaRight	Yes
HelpTabDefault	Yes
HelpTabs	No
WebBackAttach	Yes
WebBackColour	Yes
WebBackPositionX	Yes
WebBackPositionY	Yes
WebBackRepeat	Yes
WebBackURL	Yes
WebBorderColourBottom	Yes
WebBorderColourLeft	Yes
WebBorderColourRight	Yes
WebBorderColourTop	Yes
WebBorderStyleBottom	Yes
WebBorderStyleLeft	Yes
WebBorderStyleRight	Yes
WebBorderStyleTop	Yes
WebBorderWidthBottom	Yes
WebBorderWidthLeft	Yes
WebBorderWidthRight	Yes
WebBorderWidthTop	Yes
WebBlockTag	Yes
WebBulletStyle	Yes
WebBulletURL	Yes
WebClear	Yes
WebFloat	Yes
WebFontColour	Yes
WebFontName	Yes
WebFontSize	Yes
WebFontStyle	Yes
WebFontVariant	Yes
WebFontWeight	Yes
WebHeight	Yes
WebLetterSpacing	Yes
WebLineHeight	Yes

Element	Optional
WebMarginBottom	Yes
WebMarginLeft	Yes
WebMarginRight	Yes
WebMarginTop	Yes
WebNumbering	Yes
WebNumberStyle	Yes
WebPaddingBottom	Yes
WebPaddingLeft	Yes
WebPaddingRight	Yes
WebPaddingTop	Yes
WebTextAlign	Yes
WebTextDecoration	Yes
WebTextIndent	Yes
WebTextTag	Yes
WebTextTransform	Yes
WebVerticalAlign	Yes
WebWhiteSpace	Yes
WebWidth	Yes
WebWordSpacing	Yes

Sample XML

```
<Style>
+ <Object>
  <BorderBottom>>false</BorderBottom>
  <BorderLeft>>false</BorderLeft>
  <BorderRight>>false</BorderRight>
  <BorderStyle>0</BorderStyle>
  <BorderShadow>>false</BorderShadow>
  <BorderTop>>false</BorderTop>
  <Bullet>0</Bullet>
  <FontBold>>false</FontBold>
  <FontColour inherited="true">0</FontColour>
  <FontItalics>>false</FontItalics>
  <FontName inherited="true">Verdana</FontName>
  <FontSize>10</FontSize>
  <FontUnderline>0</FontUnderline>
  <FontSubscript>>false</FontSubscript>
  <FontSuperscript>>false</FontSuperscript>
  <Number>0</Number>
  <Numbering>1</Numbering>
  <NumberStart inherited="true">1</NumberStart>
  <OutlineLevel>0</OutlineLevel>
  <ParaAfter>6</ParaAfter>
  <ParaAlignment>0</ParaAlignment>
  <ParaBefore>6</ParaBefore>
  <ParaFirstLine>0</ParaFirstLine>
  <ParaLeft>0</ParaLeft>
  <ParaLineSpacing>0</ParaLineSpacing>
  <ParaRight>0</ParaRight>
  <StyleName inherited="true">Body Text</StyleName>
  <StyleType inherited="true">1</StyleType>
  <TabDefault inherited="true">2</TabDefault>
  <Tabs />
  <PrintStyleName>Body Text</PrintStyleName>
  <HelpBorderBottom>>false</HelpBorderBottom>
  <HelpBorderLeft>>false</HelpBorderLeft>
  <HelpBorderRight>>false</HelpBorderRight>
  <HelpBorderShadow>>false</HelpBorderShadow>
  <HelpBorderStyle>0</HelpBorderStyle>
  <HelpBorderTop>>false</HelpBorderTop>
  <HelpBullet>0</HelpBullet>
  <HelpFontBold>>false</HelpFontBold>
  <HelpFontColour inherited="true">0</HelpFontColour>
  <HelpFontItalics>>false</HelpFontItalics>
  <HelpFontName inherited="true">MS Sans Serif</HelpFontName>
  <HelpFontSize>8</HelpFontSize>
  <HelpNonWrapping>>false</HelpNonWrapping>
  <HelpNumber>0</HelpNumber>
  <HelpNumbering>1</HelpNumbering>
  <HelpNumberStart inherited="true">1</HelpNumberStart>
  <HelpParaAfter>0</HelpParaAfter>
  <HelpParaAlignment>0</HelpParaAlignment>
  <HelpParaBefore>4</HelpParaBefore>
  <HelpParaFirstLine>0</HelpParaFirstLine>
  <HelpParaLeft>0.2</HelpParaLeft>
  <HelpParaLineSpacing>0</HelpParaLineSpacing>
  <HelpParaRight>0.2</HelpParaRight>
  <HelpTabDefault inherited="true">2</HelpTabDefault>
  <HelpTabs />
  <WebBackAttach>Scroll</WebBackAttach>
  <WebBackColour>16777215</WebBackColour>
  <WebBackPositionX>Center</WebBackPositionX>
  <WebBackPositionY>Center</WebBackPositionY>
  <WebBackRepeat>(none)</WebBackRepeat>
  <WebBackURL />
  <WebBorderColourBottom>0</WebBorderColourBottom>
  <WebBorderColourLeft>0</WebBorderColourLeft>
```

```
<WebBorderColourRight>0</WebBorderColourRight>
<WebBorderColourTop>0</WebBorderColourTop>
<WebBorderStyleBottom>(none)</WebBorderStyleBottom>
<WebBorderStyleLeft>(none)</WebBorderStyleLeft>
<WebBorderStyleRight>(none)</WebBorderStyleRight>
<WebBorderStyleTop>(none)</WebBorderStyleTop>
<WebBorderWidthBottom>Medium</WebBorderWidthBottom>
<WebBorderWidthLeft>Medium</WebBorderWidthLeft>
<WebBorderWidthRight>Medium</WebBorderWidthRight>
<WebBorderWidthTop>Medium</WebBorderWidthTop>
<WebBlockTag>P - Paragraph</WebBlockTag>
<WebBulletStyle>Disc</WebBulletStyle>
<WebBulletURL />
<WebClear>(none)</WebClear>
<WebFloat inherited="true">(none)</WebFloat>
<WebFontColour>0</WebFontColour>
<WebFontName inherited="true">Verdana</WebFontName>
<WebFontSize>11 px</WebFontSize>
<WebFontStyle>(normal)</WebFontStyle>
<WebFontVariant>(normal)</WebFontVariant>
<WebFontWeight>(normal)</WebFontWeight>
<WebHeight>(auto)</WebHeight>
<WebLetterSpacing inherited="true">(normal)</WebLetterSpacing>
<WebLineHeight>16 px</WebLineHeight>
<WebMarginBottom>0 em</WebMarginBottom>
<WebMarginLeft>0 %</WebMarginLeft>
<WebMarginRight>0 %</WebMarginRight>
<WebMarginTop>0.8 em</WebMarginTop>
<WebNumbering>1</WebNumbering>
<WebNumberStyle>Decimal</WebNumberStyle>
<WebPaddingBottom>0 pt</WebPaddingBottom>
<WebPaddingLeft>0 pt</WebPaddingLeft>
<WebPaddingRight>0 pt</WebPaddingRight>
<WebPaddingTop>0 pt</WebPaddingTop>
<WebTextAlign>Left</WebTextAlign>
<WebTextDecoration>(none)</WebTextDecoration>
<WebTextIndent>0 cm</WebTextIndent>
<WebTextTag>(none)</WebTextTag>
<WebTextTransform>(none)</WebTextTransform>
<WebVerticalAlign inherited="true">Baseline</WebVerticalAlign>
<WebWhiteSpace inherited="true">(normal)</WebWhiteSpace>
<WebWidth>(auto)</WebWidth>
<WebWordSpacing inherited="true">(normal)</WebWordSpacing>
</Style>
```

Object Element

Description

The Object element is used by all Author-it object types, and contains the properties that are common to all objects. In Author-it these properties can be found on the General tab of each object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Book, File, Glossary, Hyperlink, Index, IndexEntry, Macro, Media, Style, TableOfContents, TableOfFigures, TitlePage, Topic

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
BasedOn	Yes	Once
CreatedBy	Yes	Once
CreatedDate	Yes	Once
Description	No	Once
FolderID	Yes	Once
GUID	No	Once
ID	No	Once
IncludeInHelp	Yes	Once
IncludeInPrint	Yes	Once
IncludeInWeb	Yes	Once
IsTemplate	Yes	Once
Key	Yes	Once
LocalizationID	Yes	Once
ModifiedBy	Yes	Once
ModifiedDate	Yes	Once
ReleaseStateID	Yes	Once
Status	Yes	Once
Type	Yes	Once
Version	Yes	Once

Sample XML

```

<Object>
  <BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
  <CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
  <CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
  <Description>Using Notepad</Description>
  <FolderID>3</FolderID>
  <GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
  <ID>164</ID>
  <IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
  <IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
  <IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
  <IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
  <Key>164</Key>
  <LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
  <ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
  <ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
  <ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
  <Status>1</Status>
  <Type>Book</Type>
  <Version>1</Version>
</Object>

```

BasedOn Element**Description**

Allows you to choose the template on which the object will be based. The names that appear in this list are derived from the Description property of an object template. The object templates that appear may depend on your security access.

The BasedOn element corresponds to the "Base this object on and inherit properties from template" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (A valid template object ID)

Sample XML

```

<BasedOn>67</BasedOn>

```

CreatedBy Element

Description

The CreatedBy element contains the user name of the person who created the object. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	1 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
```

CreatedDate Element

Description

The CreatedDate element contains the date that the object was created. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
```

Description Element

Description

Defines a descriptive name for the object. This description will be displayed as the name of the object throughout Author-it.

Note: You should enter a description that will make your objects easy to identify and find. In some object types, the description is copied to other properties when you first create the object. For example, in the Topic object the text is copied to the Print Heading, Help Heading, and the Web Heading properties.

The Description element corresponds to the "Description" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Description>Using Notepad</Description>
```

FolderID Element

Description

The FolderID element corresponds to the ID of the folder that the object is located in.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1 (A valid folder ID)

Sample XML

```
<FolderID>3</FolderID>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains a globally unique identifier.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
```

ID Element**Description**

The ID element contains the object ID. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<ID>164</ID>
```

IncludeInHelp Element**Description**

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInHelp element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Windows Help" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
```

IncludeInPrint Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInPrint element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Word Document" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
```

IncludeInWeb Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInWeb element corresponds to the "(Include object in) HTML" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
```

IsTemplate Element

Description

Determines if this object is an object template. If you check this property, the object becomes a template.

Note: You can only set this property when the object is first created, and if you have the required security access.

The IsTemplate element corresponds to the "Make this object an object template" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
```

Key Element

Description

Unique identifier for the object, which you cannot change. This number can be used for linking topics when you're producing context-sensitive Help. The number does not change if you create versions of the object.

The Key element corresponds to the "Object code" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Key>164</Key>
```

LocalizationID Element

Description

The LocalizationID element is used with localization libraries to define which localization an object belongs to (e.g. what language the object is in).

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
```

ModifiedBy Element

Description

The ModifiedBy element contains the user name of the user who last updated the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
```

ModifiedDate Element

Description

The ModifiedDate element contains the date and time the the object was last updated. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
```

ReleaseStateID Element

Description

The ReleaseStateID element contains the ID of the release state of the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
```

Status Element

Description

A read-only text property that contains the current status of the version of the object. A version of an object can move through several different states during its life cycle.

This field is shown in the "Object status" field, on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 2, where: 0=Inactive 1=Active 2=Redundant

Sample XML

```
<Status>1</Status>
```

Type Element

Description

The Type element contains the object type of the object. This field contains a string which represents which type of object this is.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Type>Book</Type>
```

Version Element

Description

Contains a read-only unique version number for each version of an object. The Object Code will not change from one version of an object to another.

This field is displayed in the "Object version" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Version>1</Version>
```

BorderBottom Element

Description

Determines which sides of the paragraph will have a border applied to them. Border Style sets the type of border applied to that side. You can choose **All Sides** to set all four sides automatically.

The BorderBottom element corresponds to the "(Apply to) Bottom" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the Style Definition tab of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<BorderBottom>false</BorderBottom>
```

BorderLeft Element

Description

Determines which sides of the paragraph will have a border applied to them. Border Style sets the type of border applied to that side. You can choose **All Sides** to set all four sides automatically.

The BorderLeft element corresponds to the "(Apply to) Left" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the Style Definition tab of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<BorderLeft>false</BorderLeft>
```

BorderRight Element**Description**

Determines which sides of the paragraph will have a border applied to them. Border Style sets the type of border applied to that side. You can choose **All Sides** to set all four sides automatically.

The BorderRight element corresponds to the "(Apply to) Right" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the Style Definition tab of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<BorderRight>false</BorderRight>
```

BorderStyle Element

Description

Allows you to choose a style for the border around the paragraph.

The BorderStyle element corresponds to the "Border style" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the Style Definition tab of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0, 1, 2 where: 0 = Standard 1 = Thick 2 = Double

Sample XML

```
<BorderStyle>0</BorderStyle>
```

BorderShadow Element

Description

Determines if a shadow is applied to the borders of the paragraph.

The BorderShadow element corresponds to the "Shadow" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the Style Definition tab of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<BorderShadow>false</BorderShadow>
```

BorderTop Element**Description**

Determines which sides of the paragraph will have a border applied to them. Border Style sets the type of border applied to that side. You can choose **All Sides** to set all four sides automatically.

The BorderTop element corresponds to the "(Apply to) Top" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the Style Definition tab of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<BorderTop>false</BorderTop>
```

Bullet Element

Description

Defines the character that will be used for the bullet. This is only available when the Numbering Type is set to Bullet. To select a character choose the **Change** button.

The Bullet element corresponds to the "Bullet" field, on the Bullets and Numbering sub-tab, on the Style Definition tab of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 6, where: 0 = Round 1 = Diamond 2 = Square 3 = HollowSquare 4 = FourDiamonds 5 = Arrow 6 = Check

Sample XML

```
<Bullet>0</Bullet>
```

FontBold Element

Description

Determines if certain effects are applied to the text for the style.

The FontBold element corresponds to the "(Effects) Bold" checkbox, on the Font sub-tab, on the Style Definition tab of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<FontBold>false</FontBold>
```

FontColour Element**Description**

Defines the color of the text for the style.

The FontColour element corresponds to the "Color" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the Style Definition tab of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 16777215, where: 0 = black 16777215 = white

Sample XML

```
<FontColour inherited="true">0</FontColour>
```

FontItalics Element

Description

Determines if certain effects are applied to the text for the style.

The FontItalics element corresponds to the "(Effects) Italics" checkbox, on the Font sub-tab, on the Style Definition tab of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<FontItalics>false</FontItalics>
```

FontName Element

Description

Allows you to choose the font face for the style.

The FontName element corresponds to the "Name" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the Style Definition tab of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<FontName inherited="true">Verdana</FontName>
```

FontSize Element**Description**

Defines the size of the font in points (pt).

The FontSize element corresponds to the "Size" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the Style Definition tab of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1 to 99 (points)

Sample XML

```
<FontSize>10</FontSize>
```

FontUnderline Element

Description

Allows you to choose the type of underlining of the text in the style.

The FontUnderline element corresponds to the "Underline" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the Style Definition tab of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 3, where: 0 = (none) 1 = Single 2 = Double 3 = Dotted

Sample XML

```
<FontUnderline>0</FontUnderline>
```

FontSubscript Element

Description

Determines if certain effects are applied to the text for the style.

The FontSubscript element corresponds to the "(Effects) Subscript" checkbox, on the Font sub-tab, on the Style Definition tab of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<FontSubscript>false</FontSubscript>
```

FontSuperscript Element**Description**

Determines if certain effects are applied to the text for the style.

The FontSuperscript element corresponds to the "(Effects) Superscript" checkbox, on the Font sub-tab, on the Style Definition tab of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<FontSubsuperscript>false</FontSuperscript>
```

Number Element

Description

Allows you to choose the style of sequential numbering to apply to the paragraph. This is only available when the *Numbering Type* is set to *Numbering*.

The Number element corresponds to the Numbered drop-down list, on the "Bullets and Numbering" sub-tab, on the "Style Definition" tab of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 4, where: 0 = 1,2,3 ... 1 = a,b,c ... 2 = A,B,C ... 3 = i,ii,iii ... 4 = I,II,III ...

Sample XML

```
<Number>0</Number>
```

Numbering Element

Description

Allows you to choose the type of numbering applied to the paragraph. The following types are allowed:

- ▶▶ **None:** no numbering is applied, and will restart any numbered paragraphs preceding it.
- ▶▶ **Numbered:** sequential numbering is applied. This will also restart any numbered paragraphs preceding it with a lower Outline Level.
- ▶▶ **Bulleted:** places a character before the paragraph. This will also restart any numbered paragraphs preceding it with a lower Outline Level.
- ▶▶ **Skip numbering:** no numbering is applied, and any numbered paragraphs will continue numbering in following paragraphs. This allows you to have multiple paragraphs for a single numbered point.

The Numbering element corresponds to the radio-button options, on the "Bullets and Numbering" sub-tab, on the "Style Definition" tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	1 to 4, where: 1 = None 2 = Numbered 3 = Bullet 4 = Skip Numbering

Sample XML

```
<Numbering>1</Numbering>
```

NumberStart Element

Description

Allows you to choose the value sequential numbering starts at. This is only available when the *Numbering Type* is set to *Numbering*. This is usually set to 1.

The NumberStart element corresponds to the "Start at" field, on the "Bullets and Numbering" sub-tab, on the "Style Definition" tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1 to 999

Sample XML

```
<NumberStart inherited="true">1</NumberStart>
```

OutlineLevel Element

Description

In multi-level numbering this determines the level for this numbered or bulleted list. Lists of a lower level are reset by lists of a higher level. For example, a list at level 1 will reset a list at level 2, but a list at level 1 will not be reset by a list at level 2. A paragraph with no numbering will reset all lists.

Note: This outline level property applies to the Windows Help and HTML CCS style definitions as well.

The OutlineLevel element corresponds to the "Outline level" field, on the "Bullets and Numbering" sub-tab, on the "Style Definition" tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 9

Sample XML

```
<OutlineLevel>0</OutlineLevel>
```

ParaAfter Element**Description**

Defines the amount of white space, in points, that will appear before and after each paragraph, and also allows you to set the spacing between individual lines within that paragraph.

Tip: You should never leave empty paragraphs between text to give the effect of white space, instead you should set this using the spacing.

The ParaAfter element corresponds to the "(Spacing) After" field, on the "Paragraph" sub-tab, on the "Style Definition" tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 999 (points)

Sample XML

```
<ParaAfter>6</ParaAfter>
```

ParaAlignment Element

Description

Allows you to choose how the paragraph will be aligned in relation to the indents.

The ParaAlignment element corresponds to the "Alignment" field, on the "Paragraph" sub-tab, on the "Style Definition" tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 3, where: 0 = Left 1 = Right 2 = Centered 3 = Justified

Sample XML

```
<ParaAlignment>0</ParaAlignment>
```

ParaBefore Element

Description

Defines the amount of white space, in points, that will appear before and after each paragraph, and also allows you to set the spacing between individual lines within that paragraph.

Tip: You should never leave empty paragraphs between text to give the effect of white space, instead you should set this using the spacing.

The ParaBefore element corresponds to the "(Spacing) Before" field, on the "Paragraph" sub-tab, on the "Style Definition" tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 999 (points)

Sample XML

```
<ParaBefore>6</ParaBefore>
```

ParaFirstLine Element**Description**

Defines the indentation of text from the Left and Right margins of the Topic Text editor, and also allows you to set a special indent for the first line, which will be relative to the Left indent.

For example, if the left indent is set to "0.5 cm", and the first line to "-0.5 cm", that will have the effect of a hanging indent of 0.5cm, with the first line flush with the margin.

The ParaFirstLine element corresponds to the "(Indentation) First line" field, on the "Paragraph" sub-tab, on the "Style Definition" tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Decimal	-55.87 to 55.87 (cm)

Sample XML

```
<ParaFirstLine>1.5</ParaFirstLine>
```

ParaLeft Element

Description

Defines the indentation of text from the Left and Right margins of the Topic Text editor, and also allows you to set a special indent for the first line, which will be relative to the Left indent.

For example, if the left indent is set to "0.5 cm", and the first line to "-0.5 cm", that will have the effect of a hanging indent of 0.5cm, with the first line flush with the margin.

The ParaLeft element corresponds to the "(Indentation) Left" field, on the "Paragraph" sub-tab, on the "Style Definition" tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Decimal	-55.87 to 55.87 (cm)

Sample XML

```
<ParaLeft>0</ParaLeft>
```

ParaLineSpacing Element

Description

Defines the amount of white space, in points, that will appear before and after each paragraph, and also allows you to set the spacing between individual lines within that paragraph.

Tip: You should never leave empty paragraphs between text to give the effect of white space, instead you should set this using the spacing.

The ParaLineSpacing element corresponds to the "(Spacing) Line spacing" field, on the "Paragraph" sub-tab, on the "Style Definition" tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 132 (points)

Sample XML

```
<ParaLineSpacing>0</ParaLineSpacing>
```

ParaRight Element**Description**

Defines the indentation of text from the Left and Right margins of the Topic Text editor, and also allows you to set a special indent for the first line, which will be relative to the Left indent.

For example, if the left indent is set to "0.5 cm", and the first line to "-0.5 cm", that will have the effect of a hanging indent of 0.5cm, with the first line flush with the margin.

The ParaRight element corresponds to the "(Indentation) Right" field, on the "Paragraph" sub-tab, on the "Style Definition" tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Decimal	-55.87 to 55.87 (cm)

Sample XML

```
<ParaRight>0</ParaRight>
```

StyleName Element

Description

Defines the name of the style. This name is displayed when selecting the style in the Topic Text. This name is mandatory and must be unique.

The StyleName element corresponds to the "Style name" field, on the "Style Definition" tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<StyleName inherited="true">Body Text</StyleName>
```

StyleType Element

Description

Allows you to choose the type of style; character or paragraph. This property can only be changed when you first create the style, and will determine what other properties can be set.

The StyleType element corresponds to the "Style type" field on the "Style Definition" tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1 or 2, where: 1 = paragraph 2 = character

Sample XML

```
<StyleType inherited="true">1</StyleType>
```

TabDefault Element**Description**

Defines a measurement (cm) for the default spacing between tab stops.

The TabDefault element corresponds to the "Default tab stop" field, on the Tabs sub-tab, on the "Style Definition" tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Decimal	0.1 to 55.87 (cm)

Sample XML

```
<TabDefault inherited="true">2</TabDefault>
```

Tabs Element

Description

Defines a list of all the tab stops in the paragraph. To add a new tab stop, type in a new measurement (cm) and choose **Set**. To Remove a tab, select it from the list and choose **Remove**.

The Tabs element corresponds to the Tabs sub-tab, on the "Style Definition" tab, on the Style object. The Tabs element contains a number of Tab elements.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Style

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
Tab	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<Tabs>
  <Tab>
    <Alignment>0</Alignment>
    0.6</Position>
  </Tab>
</Tabs>
```

Tab Element

Description

The Tab element is part of the Tab structure, and contains the Alignment and Position elements.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Tabs, HelpTabs

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
Alignment	No
Position	No

Sample XML

```
<Tab>  
  <Alignment>0</Alignment>  
  0.6</Position>  
</Tab>
```

Alignment Element

Description

Allows you to choose the type of alignment the text will have to the tab stop selected in the Tab Stop List.

The Alignment element corresponds to the "Tab alignment" field, on the "Tabs" sub-tab, on the "Style Definition" tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 3, where: 0 = Left 1 = Right 2 = Centered 3 = Decimal

Sample XML

```
<Alignment>0</Alignment>
```

Position Element

Description

The Position element corresponds to the "Tab stop position" field, on the "Tabs" sub-tab, on the "Style Definition" tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Decimal	-55.87 to 55.87 (cm)

Sample XML

```
0.6</Position>
```

PrintStyleName Element

Description

Defines the name of the style that will be applied to text in the Microsoft Word Template, as defined by the Book object being published.

Note: If the style cannot be found in the Word template, an error message is added to the publishing log for you to review after publishing is complete.

The PrintStyleName element corresponds to the "Map to style" field, on the Print sub-tab, on the Document tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<PrintStyleName>Body Text</PrintStyleName>
```

HelpBorderBottom Element

Description

Determines what sides of the paragraph will have a border applied to them in Windows Help. Help Border Style sets the type of border to display. You can choose **All Sides** to set all four sides automatically.

The HelpBorderBottom element corresponds to the "(Apply to) Bottom" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpBorderBottom>>false</HelpBorderBottom>
```

HelpBorderLeft Element

Description

Determines what sides of the paragraph will have a border applied to them in Windows Help. Help Border Style sets the type of border to display. You can choose **All Sides** to set all four sides automatically.

The HelpBorderLeft element corresponds to the "(Apply to) Left" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpBorderLeft>false</HelpBorderLeft>
```

HelpBorderRight Element

Description

Determines what sides of the paragraph will have a border applied to them in Windows Help. Help Border Style sets the type of border to display. You can choose **All Sides** to set all four sides automatically.

The HelpBorderRight element corresponds to the "(Apply to) Right" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpBorderRight>>false</HelpBorderRight>
```

HelpBorderShadow Element

Description

Determines if a shadow is applied to the borders of the paragraph in Windows Help.

The HelpBorderShadow element corresponds to the "Shadow" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpBorderShadow>>false</HelpBorderShadow>
```

HelpBorderStyle Element

Description

Allows you to choose a style for the border around the paragraph in Windows Help.

The HelpBorderStyle element corresponds to the "Border style" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 2, where: 0 = Standard 1 = Thick 2 = Double

Sample XML

```
<HelpBorderStyle>0</HelpBorderStyle>
```

HelpBorderTop Element

Description

Determines what sides of the paragraph will have a border applied to them in Windows Help. Help Border Style sets the type of border to display. You can choose **All Sides** to set all four sides automatically.

The HelpBorderTop element corresponds to the "(Apply to) Top" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpBorderTop>>false</HelpBorderTop>
```

HelpBullet Element

Description

Defines the bullet character that will be used in Windows Help. This is only available when the *Help Numbering Type* is set to *Bullet*.

The HelpBullet element corresponds to the "Bullet" drop-down list, on the "Bullets and Numbering" sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 6, where: 0= Round 1 = Diamond 2 = Square 3 = HollowSquare 4 = FourDiamonds 5 = Arrow 6 = Check

Sample XML

```
<HelpBullet>0</HelpBullet>
```

HelpFontBold Element

Description

Determines if certain effects are applied to the text for the style in Windows Help.

The HelpFontBold element corresponds to the "(Effects) Bold" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpFontItalics>>false</HelpFontItalics>
```

HelpFontColour Element

Description

Defines the color of the text for the style in Windows Help.

The HelpFontColour element corresponds to the "Color" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 16777215, where: 0 = black 16777215 = white

Sample XML

```
<HelpFontColour inherited="true">0</HelpFontColour>
```

HelpFontItalics Element

Description

Determines if certain effects are applied to the text for the style in Windows Help.

The HelpFontItalics element corresponds to the "(Effects) Bold" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpFontItalics>>false</HelpFontItalics>
```

HelpFontName Element

Description

Allows you to choose the font face for the style in Windows Help.

The HelpFontName element corresponds to the "Name" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<HelpFontName inherited="true">MS Sans Serif</HelpFontName>
```

HelpFontSize Element

Description

Defines the size of the font in points (pt) in Windows Help.

The HelpFontSize element corresponds to the "Size" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1 to 99 (points)

Sample XML

```
<HelpFontSize>8</HelpFontSize>
```

HelpNonWrapping Element

Description

Determines if the text in the paragraphs will not wrap in the Help Windows. You would use this for text you do not want to wrap, such as tabulated values.

The HelpNonWrapping element corresponds to the "Non-wrapping" field, on the Paragraph sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpNonWrapping>>false</HelpNonWrapping>
```

HelpNumber Element

Description

Allows you to choose the style of sequential numbering to apply to the paragraph in Windows Help. This is only available when the *Help Numbering Type* is set to *Numbering*.

The HelpNumber element corresponds to the "Numbering" field, on the "Bullets and Numbering" sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 4, where: 0 = 1,2,3... 1 = a,b,c... 2 = A,B,C... 3 = i,ii,iii... 4 = I,II,III...

Sample XML

```
<HelpNumber>0</HelpNumber>
```

HelpNumbering Element

Description

Allows you to choose the type of numbering applied to the paragraph in Windows Help. The following types are allowed:

- ▶▶ **None:** no numbering is applied, and will restart any numbered paragraphs preceding it.
- ▶▶ **Numbered:** sequential numbering is applied. This will also restart any numbered paragraphs preceding it with a lower Outline Level.
- ▶▶ **Bulleted:** places a character before the paragraph. This will also restart any numbered paragraphs preceding it with a lower Outline Level.
- ▶▶ **Skip numbering:** no numbering is applied, and any numbered paragraphs will continue numbering in following paragraphs. This allows you to have multiple paragraphs for a single numbered point.

The HelpNumbering element corresponds to the radio-button options, on the "Bullets and Numbering" sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 16777215, where: 1 = (none) 2 = Numbering 3 = Bullet 4 = Skip Numbering

Sample XML

```
<HelpNumbering>1</HelpNumbering>
```

HelpNumberStart Element

Description

Allows you to chose the value sequential numbering starts from in Windows Help. This is only available when the *Help Numbering Type* is set to *Numbering*. This property is usually set to 1.

The HelpNumberStart element corresponds to the "Start at" field, on the "Bullets and Numbering" sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	1 to 999

Sample XML

```
<HelpNumberStart inherited="true">1</HelpNumberStart>
```

HelpParaAfter Element

Description

Defines the amount of white space in points, that will appear before and after each paragraph in Windows Help, and also allows you to set the spacing between individual lines within that paragraph.

Tip: You should never leave empty paragraphs between text to give the effect of white space, instead you should set this space using the spacing.

The HelpParaAfter element corresponds to the "(Spacing) Line-spacing" field, on the Paragraph sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Decimal	0 to 999 (points)

Sample XML

```
<HelpParaAfter>0</HelpParaAfter>
```

HelpParaAlignment Element

Description

Allows you to choose how the paragraph will be aligned in relation to the indents from the edge of the help window.

The HelpParaAlignment element corresponds to the "Alignment" field, on the Paragraph sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 3, where: 0 = Left 1 = Right 2 = Centered 3 = Justified

Sample XML

```
<HelpParaAlignment>0</HelpParaAlignment>
```

HelpParaBefore Element

Description

Defines the amount of white space in points, that will appear before and after each paragraph in Windows Help, and also allows you to set the spacing between individual lines within that paragraph.

Tip: You should never leave empty paragraphs between text to give the effect of white space, instead you should set this space using the spacing.

The HelpParaAfter element corresponds to the "(Spacing) Before" field, on the Paragraph sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
Decimal	0 to 999 (points)

Sample XML

```
<HelpParaBefore>4</HelpParaBefore>
```

HelpParaFirstLine Element

Description

Defines the indentation of text from the Left and Right edges of the Help Window, and also allows you to set a special indent for the first line, which will be relative to the Left indent.

For example, if the left indent is set to "0.5 cm", and the first line to "-0.5 cm", that will have the effect of a hanging indent of 0.5cm, with the first line flush with the edge of the Help Window.

The HelpParaFirstLine element corresponds to the "(Indentation) First line" field, on the Paragraph sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
Decimal	-55.87 to 55.87

Sample XML

```
<HelpParaFirstLine>0</HelpParaFirstLine>
```

HelpParaLeft Element

Description

Defines the indentation of text from the Left and Right edges of the Help Window, and also allows you to set a special indent for the first line, which will be relative to the Left indent.

For example, if the left indent is set to "0.5 cm", and the first line to "-0.5 cm", that will have the effect of a hanging indent of 0.5cm, with the first line flush with the edge of the Help Window.

The HelpParaLeft element corresponds to the "(Indentation) Left" field, on the Paragraph sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
Decimal	-55.87 to 55.87

Sample XML

```
<HelpParaLeft>0.2</HelpParaLeft>
```

HelpParaLineSpacing Element

Description

Defines the amount of white space in points, that will appear before and after each paragraph in Windows Help, and also allows you to set the spacing between individual lines within that paragraph.

Tip: You should never leave empty paragraphs between text to give the effect of white space, instead you should set this space using the spacing.

The HelpParaLineSpacing element corresponds to the "(Spacing) Line-spacing" field, on the Paragraph sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
Decimal	0 to 132 (points)

Sample XML

```
<HelpParaLineSpacing>0</HelpParaLineSpacing>
```

HelpParaRight Element

Description

Defines the indentation of text from the Left and Right edges of the Help Window, and also allows you to set a special indent for the first line, which will be relative to the Left indent.

For example, if the left indent is set to "0.5 cm", and the first line to "-0.5 cm", that will have the effect of a hanging indent of 0.5cm, with the first line flush with the edge of the Help Window.

The HelpParaRight element corresponds to the "(Indentation) Right" field, on the Paragraph sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Decimal	-55.87 to 55.87

Sample XML

```
<HelpParaRight>0.2</HelpParaRight>
```

HelpTabDefault Element

Description

Defines a measurement (cm) for the default spacing between tab stops for the style in the Windows Help.

The HelpTabDefault element corresponds to the "Default tab stop" field, on the Tabs sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Decimal	0.1 to 55.87 (cm)

Sample XML

```
<HelpTabDefault inherited="true">2</HelpTabDefault>
```

HelpTabs Element

Description

Defines a list of all the tab stops in the paragraph. To add a new tab stop, type in a new measurement (cm) and choose **Set**. To Remove a tab, select it from the list and choose **Remove**.

The HelpTabs element corresponds to the Tabs sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, on the Style object. The HelpTabs element contains a number of Tab elements.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Style

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
Tab	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<HelpTabs>
  <Tab>
    <Alignment>0</Alignment>
    0.6</Position>
  </Tab>
</HelpTabs>
```

Tab Element

Description

The Tab element is part of the Tab structure, and contains the Alignment and Position elements.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Tabs, HelpTabs

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
Alignment	No
Position	No

Sample XML

```
<Tab>  
  <Alignment>0</Alignment>  
  0.6</Position>  
</Tab>
```

Alignment Element

Description

Allows you to choose the type of alignment the text will have to the tab stop selected in the Tab Stop List.

The Alignment element corresponds to the "Tab alignment" field, on the "Tabs" sub-tab, on the "Style Definition" tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 3, where: 0 = Left 1 = Right 2 = Centered 3 = Decimal

Sample XML

```
<Alignment>0</Alignment>
```

Position Element

Description

The Position element corresponds to the "Tab stop position" field, on the "Tabs" sub-tab, on the "Style Definition" tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Decimal	-55.87 to 55.87 (cm)

Sample XML

```
0.6</Position>
```

WebBackAttach Element

Description

Allows you to choose how the CSS Background Image will be attached to the text in the CSS definition.

The WebBackAttach element corresponds to the "Attach" field, on the Background sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 50 characters long, values: Scroll Fixed

Sample XML

```
<WebBackAttach>Scroll</WebBackAttach>
```

WebBackColour Element**Description**

Allows you to set a color for the background of the text in the CSS definition.

The WebBackColour element corresponds to the "Color" field, on the Background sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 16777215, where: 0 = black 16777215 = white

Sample XML

```
<WebBackColour>16777215</WebBackColour>
```

WebBackPositionX Element

Description

Defines the vertical and horizontal position of the CSS Background Image relative to the top left hand corner of the text or paragraph element. You can enter a percentage value, or select a value from the list.

The WebBackPositionX element corresponds to the "(Position) Horizontal" field, on the Background sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 50 characters long, values: x % Top Center Bottom

Sample XML

```
<WebBackPositionX>Center</WebBackPositionX>
```

WebBackPositionY Element

Description

Defines the vertical and horizontal position of the CSS Background Image relative to the top left hand corner of the text or paragraph element. You can enter a percentage value, or select a value from the list.

The WebBackPositionY element corresponds to the "(Position) Vertical" field, on the Background sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 50 characters long, values: x % Top Center Bottom

Sample XML

```
<WebBackPositionY>Center</WebBackPositionY>
```

WebBackRepeat Element**Description**

Allows you to choose how the CSS Background Image will be repeated across the background of the text in the CSS definition.

The WebBackRepeat element corresponds to the "Repeat" field, on the Background sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 50 characters long, values: (none) Vertically Horizontally Both

Sample XML

```
<WebBackRepeat> (none ) </WebBackRepeat>
```

WebBackURL Element

Description

Defines a link to an image file that will be displayed as the background for the text in the CSS definition.

The WebBackURL element corresponds to the "URL" field, on the Background sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 4000 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebBackURL>C:\Program Files\AuthorIT
V4\Data\Libraries\Graphics\0183.gif</WebBackURL>
```

WebBorderColourBottom Element

Description

Defines a color for the border. You can choose a color for each of the four sides.

The WebBorderColourBottom element corresponds to the "(Bottom) Color" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 16777215, where: 0 = black 16777215 = white

Sample XML

```
<WebBorderColourBottom>0</WebBorderColourBottom>
```

WebBorderColourLeft Element**Description**

Defines a color for the border. You can choose a color for each of the four sides.

The WebBorderColourLeft element corresponds to the "(Left) Color" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 16777215, where: 0 = black 16777215 = white

Sample XML

```
<WebBorderColourLeft>0</WebBorderColourLeft>
```

WebBorderColourRight Element

Description

Defines a color for the border. You can choose a color for each of the four sides.

The WebBorderColourRight element corresponds to the "(Right) Color" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 16777215, where: 0 = black 16777215 = white

Sample XML

```
<WebBorderColourRight>0</WebBorderColourRight>
```

WebBorderColourTop Element

Description

Defines a color for the border. You can choose a color for each of the four sides.

The WebBorderColourTop element corresponds to the "(Top) Color" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 16777215, where: 0 = black 16777215 = white

Sample XML

```
<WebBorderColourTop>0</WebBorderColourTop>
```

WebBorderStyleBottom Element**Description**

Allows you to choose a style for the border. You can choose a different style for each of the four sides. If you do not want a border for a particular side, then choose "(none)".

The WebBorderStyleBottom element corresponds to the "(Bottom) Style" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (none) Dotted Dashed Solid Double Grooved Ridge Inset Outset

Sample XML

```
<WebBorderStyleBottom>(none)</WebBorderStyleBottom>
```

WebBorderStyleLeft Element

Description

Allows you to choose a style for the border. You can choose a different style for each of the four sides. If you do not want a border for a particular side, then choose "(none)".

The WebBorderStyleLeft element corresponds to the "(Left) Style" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (none) Dotted Dashed Solid Double Grooved Ridge Inset Outset

Sample XML

```
<WebBorderStyleLeft>(none)</WebBorderStyleLeft>
```

WebBorderStyleRight Element

Description

Allows you to choose a style for the border. You can choose a different style for each of the four sides. If you do not want a border for a particular side, then choose "(none)".

The WebBorderStyleRight element corresponds to the "(Right) Style" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (none) Dotted Dashed Solid Double Grooved Ridge Inset Outset

Sample XML

```
<WebBorderStyleRight>(none)</WebBorderStyleRight>
```

WebBorderStyleTop Element

Description

Allows you to choose a style for the border. You can choose a different style for each of the four sides. If you do not want a border for a particular side, then choose "(none)".

The WebBorderStyleTop element corresponds to the "(Top) Style" field, on the Borders sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (none) Dotted Dashed Solid Double Grooved Ridge Inset Outset

Sample XML

```
<WebBorderStyleTop>(none)</WebBorderStyleTop>
```

WebBorderWidthBottom Element

Description

Defines the width of the border to apply to a text or paragraph element. You can enter a relative measurement, an exact measurement, or choose a setting from the list for each of the four sides.

The WebBorderWidthBottom element corresponds to the "(Bottom) Width" field, on the Background sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long. Valid values: (Fixed Units) Thin Medium Thick

Sample XML

```
<WebBorderWidthBottom>Medium</WebBorderWidthBottom>
```

WebBorderWidthLeft Element

Description

Defines the width of the border to apply to a text or paragraph element. You can enter a relative measurement, an exact measurement, or choose a setting from the list for each of the four sides.

The WebBorderWidthLeft element corresponds to the "(Left) Width" field, on the Background sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long. Valid values: (Fixed Units) Thin Medium Thick

Sample XML

```
<WebBorderWidthLeft>Medium</WebBorderWidthLeft>
```

WebBorderWidthRight Element

Description

Defines the width of the border to apply to a text or paragraph element. You can enter a relative measurement, an exact measurement, or choose a setting from the list for each of the four sides.

The WebBorderWidthRight element corresponds to the "(Right) Width" field, on the Background sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long. Valid values: (Fixed Units) Thin Medium Thick

Sample XML

```
<WebBorderWidthRight>Medium</WebBorderWidthRight>
```

WebBorderWidthTop Element**Description**

Defines the width of the border to apply to a text or paragraph element. You can enter a relative measurement, an exact measurement, or choose a setting from the list for each of the four sides.

The WebBorderWidthTop element corresponds to the "(Top) Width" field, on the Background sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long. Valid values: (Fixed Units) Thin Medium Thick

Sample XML

```
<WebBorderWidthTop>Medium</WebBorderWidthTop>
```

WebBlockTag Element

Description

Allows you to choose an HTML paragraph tag that will be applied to the selected text. This allows browsers that do not support CSS to still render the text in a chosen format. You can only set this property when the *CSS Numbering Type* is set to *None*.

The WebBlockTag element corresponds to the "None" field, on the List Style sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: P - Paragraph ADDRESS - Address information BLOCKQUOTE - Large quotations PRE - Preformatted Text H1 - Heading Level 1 H2 - Heading Level 2 H3 - Heading Level 3 H4 - Heading Level 4 H5 - Heading Level 5 H6 - Heading Level 6

Sample XML

```
<WebBlockTag>P - Paragraph</WebBlockTag>
```

WebBulletStyle Element

Description

Allows you to choose the style of bullet applied to the paragraph in HTML. This is only available when the *CSS Numbering Type* is set to *Bullet*.

The WebBulletStyle element corresponds to the "Bullet" field, on the Background sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: Disc Circle Square

Sample XML

```
<WebBulletStyle>Disc</WebBulletStyle>
```

WebBulletURL Element

Description

Sets a link to an image file that will be displayed as the bullet for the paragraph in HTML. This is only available when the *CSS Numbering Type* is set to *Bullet*, and will replace the CSS Bullet Style. This property supports relative folders.

The WebBulletURL element corresponds to the "Bullet" field, on the List Style sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 4000 characters long

Sample XML

```
<WebBulletURL>C:\Program Files\AuthorIT
V4\Data\Libraries\Graphics\0194.gif</WebBulletURL>
```

WebClear Element

Description

Allows you to choose whether this element will allow floating elements, defined by CSS Float, to be on its sides. More specifically the value of this property lists the sides where floating elements are not accepted.

The WebClear element corresponds to the "Clear" field, on the Layout sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 16777215, where: 0 = black 16777215 = white
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (none) Left Right Both

Sample XML

```
<WebClear>(none)</WebClear>
```

WebFloat Element**Description**

Allows you to choose how other text will wrap around this element. A value of "Left" will cause the element to be aligned to the left and other text to wrap on the right hand side of it.

The WebFloat element corresponds to the "Float" field, on the Layout sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (none) Left Right

Sample XML

```
<WebFloat inherited="true">(none)</WebFloat>
```

WebFontColour Element**Description**

Defines the color of the text in the CSS definition.

The WebFontColour element corresponds to the "Color" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 16777215, where: 0 = black 16777215 = white

Sample XML

```
<WebFontColour>0</WebFontColour>
```

WebFontName Element

Description

Allows you to choose the font face for the CSS definition.

The WebFontName element corresponds to the "Name" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<WebFontName inherited="true">Verdana</WebFontName>
```

WebFontSize Element

Description

Defines the size of the font in the CSS definition. This can be an exact measurement, a relative measurement, or a value selected from the list.

The WebFontSize element corresponds to the "Size" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (x units) Smaller xx-Small x-Small Small Medium Large x-Large xx-Large Larger

Sample XML

```
<WebFontSize>11 px</WebFontSize>
```

WebFontStyle Element

Description

Allows you to choose from several effects to apply to the text in CSS definition. The "(normal)" setting means the effect is not applied.

The WebFontStyle element corresponds to the "(Effects) Style" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (normal) Italic Oblique

Sample XML

```
<WebFontStyle>(normal)</WebFontStyle>
```

WebFontVariant Element

Description

Allows you to choose from several effects to apply to the text in CSS definition. The "(normal)" setting means the effect is not applied.

The WebFontVariant element corresponds to the "(Effects) Variant" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (normal) Small-caps

Sample XML

```
<WebFontVariant>(normal)</WebFontVariant>
```

WebFontWeight Element**Description**

Allows you to choose from several effects to apply to the text in CSS definition. The "(normal)" setting means the effect is not applied.

The WebFontWeight element corresponds to the "(Effects) Weight" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (normal) Small-caps

Sample XML

```
<WebFontWeight>(normal)</WebFontWeight>
```

WebHeight Element

Description

Defines the physical size in height and width of a text or paragraph element. You can enter a value of "(auto)", a relative measurement, an exact measurement, or a percentage value. Negative values are not allowed.

The WebHeight element corresponds to the "Height" field, on the Layout sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (auto) x units

Sample XML

```
<WebHeight>(auto)</WebHeight>
```

WebLetterSpacing Element

Description

Defines the spacing between letters for the paragraph or text element in CSS definition. You can enter a value of "(normal)", a relative measurement, or an exact measurement.

The WebLetterSpacing element corresponds to the "(Spacing) Letter" field, on the Text sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (normal) fixed units

Sample XML

```
<WebLetterSpacing inherited="true">(normal)</WebLetterSpacing>
```

WebLineHeight Element**Description**

Defines the distance between two adjacent lines' baselines (bottom of the line). You can enter a value of "(normal)", a relative measurement, an exact measurement, or a percentage value. Negative values are not allowed.

The WebLineHeight element corresponds to the "(Line) Height" field, on the Text sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (normal) x units

Sample XML

```
<WebLineHeight>16 px</WebLineHeight>
```

WebMarginBottom Element

Description

Defines the margin between a text or paragraph element and its border. You can enter a value of "(auto)", a relative measurement, an exact measurement, or a percentage value for each of the four sides. Negative values are allowed.

The WebMarginBottom element corresponds to the "Bottom margin" field, on the Spacing sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (auto) x units

Sample XML

```
<WebMarginBottom>0 em</WebMarginBottom>
```

WebMarginLeft Element

Description

Defines the margin between a text or paragraph element and its border. You can enter a value of "(auto)", a relative measurement, an exact measurement, or a percentage value for each of the four sides. Negative values are allowed.

The WebMarginLeft element corresponds to the "Left margin" field, on the Spacing sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (auto) x units

Sample XML

```
<WebMarginLeft>0 %</WebMarginLeft>
```

WebMarginRight Element**Description**

Defines the margin between a text or paragraph element and its border. You can enter a value of "(auto)", a relative measurement, an exact measurement, or a percentage value for each of the four sides. Negative values are allowed.

The WebMarginRight element corresponds to the "Bottom margin" field, on the Spacing sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (auto) x units

Sample XML

```
<WebMarginRight>0 %</WebMarginRight>
```

WebMarginTop Element

Description

Defines the margin between a text or paragraph element and its border. You can enter a value of "(auto)", a relative measurement, an exact measurement, or a percentage value for each of the four sides. Negative values are allowed.

The WebMarginTop element corresponds to the "Top margin" field, on the Spacing sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (auto) x units

Sample XML

```
<WebMarginTop>0.8 em</WebMarginTop>
```

WebNumbering Element

Description

Allows you to choose the type of numbering applied to the paragraph in the HTML. The following types are allowed:

- ▶▶ **None:** no numbering is applied, and will restart any numbered paragraphs preceding it. You must choose a paragraph tag.
- ▶▶ **Numbering:** sequential numbering is applied. This will also restart any numbered paragraphs preceding it with a lower Outline Level.
- ▶▶ **Bullet:** places a character before the paragraph. This will also restart any numbered paragraphs preceding it with a lower Outline Level.
- ▶▶ **Skip numbering:** no numbering is applied, and any numbered paragraphs will continue numbering in following paragraphs. This allows you to have multiple paragraphs for a single numbered point.

▶▶

The WebNumbering element corresponds to the radio-button options, on the "Bullets and Numbering" sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	1 to 4, where: 1 = None 2 = Numbering 3 = Bullet 4 = Skip Numbering

Sample XML

```
<WebNumbering>1</WebNumbering>
```

WebNumberStyle Element

Description

Allows you to chose the style of sequential numbering applied to the paragraph in the HTML. This is only available when the *CSS Numbering Type* is set to *Numbering*.

The WebNumberStyle element corresponds to the "Numbering" field, on the List Style sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: Decimal Lower-Roman Upper-Roman Lower-Alpha Upper-Alpha

Sample XML

```
<WebNumberStyle>Decimal</WebNumberStyle>
```

WebPaddingBottom Element

Description

Defines the margin between a text or paragraph element and its border. You can enter a value of "(auto)", a relative measurement, an exact measurement, or a percentage value for each of the four sides. Negative values are allowed.

The WebPaddingBottom element corresponds to the "Bottom Padding" field, on the Spacing sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (auto) x units

Sample XML

```
<WebPaddingBottom>0 pt</WebPaddingBottom>
```

WebPaddingLeft Element**Description**

Defines the margin between a text or paragraph element and its border. You can enter a value of "(auto)", a relative measurement, an exact measurement, or a percentage value for each of the four sides. Negative values are allowed.

The WebPaddingLeft element corresponds to the "Left Padding" field, on the Spacing sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (auto) x units

Sample XML

```
<WebPaddingLeft>0 pt</WebPaddingLeft>
```

WebPaddingRight Element

Description

Defines the margin between a text or paragraph element and its border. You can enter a value of "(auto)", a relative measurement, an exact measurement, or a percentage value for each of the four sides. Negative values are allowed.

The WebPaddingRight element corresponds to the "Right Padding" field, on the Spacing sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (auto) x units

Sample XML

```
<WebPaddingRight>0 pt</WebPaddingRight>
```

WebPaddingTop Element

Description

Defines the margin between a text or paragraph element and its border. You can enter a value of "(auto)", a relative measurement, an exact measurement, or a percentage value for each of the four sides. Negative values are allowed.

The WebPaddingTop element corresponds to the "Top Padding" field, on the Spacing sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (auto) x units

Sample XML

```
<WebPaddingTop>0 pt</WebPaddingTop>
```

WebTextAlign Element**Description**

Allows you to choose how the paragraph will be aligned in relation to the indents from the edge of the HTML page.

The WebTextAlign element corresponds to the "Text alignment" field, on the Text sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: Left Right Center Justify

Sample XML

```
<WebTextAlign>Left</WebTextAlign>
```

WebTextDecoration Element

Description

Allows you to choose from several effects to apply to the text in CSS definition. The "(normal)" setting means the effect is not applied.

The WebTextDecoration element corresponds to the "(Effects) Decoration" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (none) Underline Overline Line-through Blink

Sample XML

```
<WebTextDecoration>(none)</WebTextDecoration>
```

WebTextIndent Element

Description

Defines the indentation that appears before the first formatted line. The value may be negative, and can be a relative measurement, an exact measurement, or a percentage value.

The WebTextIndent element corresponds to the "Indent" field, on the Text sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: x units

Sample XML

```
<WebTextIndent>0 cm</WebTextIndent>
```

WebTextTag Element**Description**

Allows you to choose an HTML character tag that will be applied to the selected text. This allows browsers that don't support CSS to still render the text in a chosen format.

The WebTextTag element corresponds to the "Tag" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: '(none) 'BIG - Larger text 'CITE - Short citation 'CODE - Code fragment 'DFN - Definition of a term 'EM - Emphasized text 'KBD - Keyboard input 'SAMP - Sample text 'SMALL - Smaller text 'STRONG - Strongly emphasized 'SUB - Subscript 'SUP - Superscript 'VAR - Variable 'U - Underlined 'B - Bold 'I - Italics

Sample XML

<WebTextTag> (none) </WebTextTag>

WebTextTransform Element

Description

Allows you to choose from several effects to apply to the text in CSS definition. The "(normal)" setting means the effect is not applied.

The WebTextTransform element corresponds to the "(Effects) Transform" field, on the Font sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (none) Capitalize Uppercase Lowercase

Sample XML

```
<WebTextTransform>(none)</WebTextTransform>
```

WebVerticalAlign Element**Description**

Defines the vertical positioning of the text or paragraph element relative to the baseline of the current line. You can enter a percentage value, or choose a setting from the list.

The WebVerticalAlign element corresponds to the "Vertical alignment" field, on the Text sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (Percent%) Baseline Sub Super Top Text-top Middle Bottom Text-bottom

Sample XML

```
<WebVerticalAlign inherited="true">Baseline</WebVerticalAlign>
```

WebWhiteSpace Element

Description

Allows you to choose how white space inside the element will be handled. A setting of "(normal)" collapses white space, as in a proportional font, and a setting of "Pre" will not, as in a non-proportional font.

The WebWhiteSpace element corresponds to the "White space" field, on the Layout sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (normal) Pre Nowrap

Sample XML

```
<WebWhiteSpace inherited="true">(normal)</WebWhiteSpace>
```

WebWidth Element**Description**

Defines the physical size in height and width of a text or paragraph element. You can enter a value of "(auto)", a relative measurement, an exact measurement, or a percentage value. Negative values are not allowed.

The WebWidth element corresponds to the "Width" field, on the Layout sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (auto) x units

Sample XML

```
<WebWidth>(auto)</WebWidth>
```

WebWordSpacing Element

Description

Defines the spacing between words for the paragraph or text element in CSS definition. You can enter a value of "(normal)", a relative measurement, or an exact measurement.

The WebWordSpacing element corresponds to the "(Spacing) Word" field, on the Text sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Style object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Style

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long. Valid values: (normal) x units

Sample XML

```
<WebWordSpacing inherited="true">(normal)</WebWordSpacing>
```

TableOfContents Element



Description

The Table of Contents object, or TOC for short, represents a Table of Contents in both the printed and on-line documentation. Inclusion of Table of Contents object in the contents of a Book object will automatically create a professional Table of Contents in the Word document, the Contents tab for on-line help, and a contents page in HTML.

The TableOfContents element represents an Author-it Table Of Contents object, and contains all of its properties.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Values</u>
wordcount	Yes	Integer	>= 0

Parent Element

Objects

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
Object	No
PrintAddSuperHeadings	Yes
PrintMedia	Yes
PrintPageNumber	Yes
PrintRightAlign	Yes
PrintShowLevel	Yes
PrintTitle	Yes
HelpMultiBookTargets	Yes
HelpTitle	Yes
HelpWindow	Yes
WebContentsType	Yes
WebFrameType	Yes
WebFrameWidth	Yes
WebHHSitemapTemplate	Yes
WebHHTocTemplate	Yes
WebJHTocTemplate	Yes
WebMedia	Yes
WebOHTocTemplate	Yes
WebTitle	Yes

Sample XML

```

<TableOfContents>
+ <Object>
  <PrintAddSuperHeadings>true</PrintAddSuperHeadings>
  <PrintMedia>31</PrintMedia>
  <PrintPageNumber>true</PrintPageNumber>
  <PrintRightAlign>true</PrintRightAlign>
  <PrintShowLevel>3</PrintShowLevel>
  <PrintTitle>Contents</PrintTitle>
  <HelpMultiBookTargets />
  <HelpTitle />
  <HelpWindow>35</HelpWindow>
  <WebContentsType>1</WebContentsType>
  <WebFrameType>3</WebFrameType>
  <WebFrameWidth>30</WebFrameWidth>
  <WebHHSitemapTemplate>..\Templates\HTML
Help\toc.hhc</WebHHSitemapTemplate>
  <WebHHTocTemplate>Templates\hh_toc.htm</WebHHTocTemplate>
  <WebJHTocTemplate>..\Templates_toc.xml</WebJHTocTemplate>
  <WebMedia>31</WebMedia>
  <WebOHTocTemplate>..\Templates\JavaHelp\jh_toc.xml</WebOHTocTemplate>
  <WebTitle>Contents</WebTitle>
</TableOfContents>

```

Object Element

Description

The Object element is used by all Author-it object types, and contains the properties that are common to all objects. In Author-it these properties can be found on the General tab of each object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Book, File, Glossary, Hyperlink, Index, IndexEntry, Macro, Media, Style, TableOfContents, TableOfFigures, TitlePage, Topic

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
BasedOn	Yes	Once
CreatedBy	Yes	Once
CreatedDate	Yes	Once
Description	No	Once
FolderID	Yes	Once
GUID	No	Once
ID	No	Once

Element	Optional	Occurs
IncludelnHelp	Yes	Once
IncludelnPrint	Yes	Once
IncludelnWeb	Yes	Once
IsTemplate	Yes	Once
Key	Yes	Once
LocalizationID	Yes	Once
ModifiedBy	Yes	Once
ModifiedDate	Yes	Once
ReleaseStateID	Yes	Once
Status	Yes	Once
Type	Yes	Once
Version	Yes	Once

Sample XML

```

<Object>
  <BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
  <CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
  <CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
  <Description>Using Notepad</Description>
  <FolderID>3</FolderID>
  <GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
  <ID>164</ID>
  <IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
  <IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
  <IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
  <IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
  <Key>164</Key>
  <LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
  <ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
  <ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
  <ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
  <Status>1</Status>
  <Type>Book</Type>
  <Version>1</Version>
</Object>

```

BasedOn Element

Description

Allows you to choose the template on which the object will be based. The names that appear in this list are derived from the Description property of an object template. The object templates that appear may depend on your security access.

The BasedOn element corresponds to the "Base this object on and inherit properties from template" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	>= 0 (A valid template object ID)

Sample XML

```
<BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
```

CreatedBy Element

Description

The CreatedBy element contains the user name of the person who created the object. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

Data Type	Range
String	1 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
```

CreatedDate Element

Description

The CreatedDate element contains the date that the object was created. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
```

Description Element

Description

Defines a descriptive name for the object. This description will be displayed as the name of the object throughout Author-it.

Note: You should enter a description that will make your objects easy to identify and find. In some object types, the description is copied to other properties when you first create the object. For example, in the Topic object the text is copied to the Print Heading, Help Heading, and the Web Heading properties.

The Description element corresponds to the "Description" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Description>Using Notepad</Description>
```

FolderID Element

Description

The FolderID element corresponds to the ID of the folder that the object is located in.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1 (A valid folder ID)

Sample XML

```
<FolderID>3</FolderID>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains a globally unique identifier.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
```

ID Element

Description

The ID element contains the object ID. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<ID>164</ID>
```

IncludeInHelp Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInHelp element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Windows Help" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
```

IncludeInPrint Element**Description**

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInPrint element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Word Document" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
```

IncludeInWeb Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInWeb element corresponds to the "(Include object in) HTML" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
```

IsTemplate Element

Description

Determines if this object is an object template. If you check this property, the object becomes a template.

Note: You can only set this property when the object is first created, and if you have the required security access.

The IsTemplate element corresponds to the "Make this object an object template" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IsTemplate>false</IsTemplate>
```

Key Element

Description

Unique identifier for the object, which you cannot change. This number can be used for linking topics when you're producing context-sensitive Help. The number does not change if you create versions of the object.

The Key element corresponds to the "Object code" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Key>164</Key>
```

LocalizationID Element

Description

The LocalizationID element is used with localization libraries to define which localization an object belongs to (e.g. what language the object is in).

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
```

ModifiedBy Element

Description

The ModifiedBy element contains the user name of the user who last updated the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
```

ModifiedDate Element

Description

The ModifiedDate element contains the date and time the the object was last updated. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
```

ReleaseStateID Element

Description

The ReleaseStateID element contains the ID of the release state of the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
```

Status Element

Description

A read-only text property that contains the current status of the version of the object. A version of an object can move through several different states during its life cycle.

This field is shown in the "Object status" field, on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 2, where: 0=Inactive 1=Active 2=Redundant

Sample XML

```
<Status>1</Status>
```

Type Element

Description

The Type element contains the object type of the object. This field contains a string which represents which type of object this is.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Type>Book</Type>
```

Version Element

Description

Contains a read-only unique version number for each version of an object. The Object Code will not change from one version of an object to another.

This field is displayed in the "Object version" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Version>1</Version>
```

PrintAddSuperHeadings Element

Description

For topics which have Super Headings defined, adds the Super Heading text and numbering (for example, the words "Chapter 2") to the front of the topic's heading in the TOC.

The PrintAddSuperHeadings element corresponds to the "Add super headings" field, on the Document tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintAddSuperHeadings>true</PrintAddSuperHeadings>
```

PrintMedia Element

Description

Sets a relationship to a Media object that defines the page set-up and layout of the Table of Contents section. A table of contents always starts a new section, so you must select a Media object.

The PrintMedia element corresponds to the "Media" field, on the Document tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (an object id)

Sample XML

<PrintMedia>31</PrintMedia>

PrintPageNumber Element

Description

Determines if page numbers are included in the TOC of the Word document.

The PrintPageNumber element corresponds to the "Include page numbers" field, on the Document tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

<PrintPageNumber>true</PrintPageNumber>

PrintRightAlign Element

Description

Determines if the page numbers in the Table of Contents of the Word document are right aligned. You must select *TOC Include Page Numbers* for this to have any effect.

The PrintRightAlign element corresponds to the "Right align page number" field, on the Document tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintRightAlign>true</PrintRightAlign>
```

PrintShowLevel Element

Description

Defines the number of levels that will be shown in the Table of Contents.

Note: The Table of Contents is built from the "Heading x" styles in the Word document, so if a Topic object has been defined with a Document Heading Style different to "(auto)" or a style mapped to a "Heading x" style in Word, then it will not appear in the Table of Contents.

The PrintShowLevel element corresponds to the "Show level" field, on the Document tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 9

Sample XML

```
<PrintShowLevel>3</PrintShowLevel>
```

PrintTitle Element

Description

Defines a title for the TOC in the Word Document. This title has a style of "TOCTitle" automatically applied in the published Word document.

The PrintTitle element corresponds to the "TOC title" field, on the Document tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<PrintTitle>Contents</PrintTitle>
```

HelpMultiBookTargets Element

Description

Sets a relationship between this TOC and one or more other Books that will be included at the end of the contents as references to other contents files (.cnt) published by other Books.

The HelpMultiBookTargets element corresponds to the "Create multi-helpfile contents from" field, on the Windows Help tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
Relation	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<HelpMultiBookTargets>
- <Relation>
  <ID>3543</ID>
</Relation>
</HelpMultiBookTargets>
```

Relation Element

Description

The Relation element contains an ID element which represents an Author-it object to which the parent has a relationship.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

HelpMultiBookTargets, HyperLinksTargets, Targets

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
ID	No

Sample XML

```
<HyperLinksTargets>
- <Relation>
  <ID>3543</ID>
</Relation>
</HyperLinksTargets>
```

Relation Element

Description

The ID element is part of the relations structure, and contains a number which represents an Author-it object to which the parent has a relationship.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Relation

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	>= 0, an object id

Sample XML

```
<HyperLinksTargets>
- <Relation>
  <ID>3543</ID>
</Relation>
</HyperLinksTargets>
```

HelpTitle Element

Description

Defines a title for the contents window.

Note: If you leave this property empty, the title of the contents window will automatically default to the Help Title defined in the Book object.

The HelpTitle element corresponds to the "Content title" field, on the Windows Help tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<HelpTitle>Contents</HelpTitle>
```

HelpWindow Element**Description**

Media object that defines the default Help window to use when a reader jumps to the topic from the Contents tab of the Help file.

The HelpWindow element corresponds to the "Default window" field, on the Windows Help tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<HelpWindow>35</HelpWindow>
```

WebContentsType Element**Description**

What type of Table of Contents will be published:

- ▶▶ A TOC made from plain HTML pages or DHTML pages.
- OR-

▶▶ An HTML Help TOC (requires the HTML Help ActiveX or Java Applet component).

Note: Make sure that the type of Index matches - either Plain HTML, DHTML, or HTML Help.

The WebContentsType element corresponds to the main radio button options, on the Plain HTML sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1 to 3, where: 1 = Plain HTML 2 = HTML Help 3 = DHTML

Sample XML

```
<WebContentsType>1</WebContentsType>
```

WebFrameType Element

Description

Specifies how Author-it will display the HTML contents page:

- ▶▶ in a separate frame displayed beside the main document using a frameset created by Author-it.
- ▶▶ as a full separate page.
- ▶▶ in a separate frame named "TOC" using a custom frameset defined by the Book containing the TOC.

The WebFrameType element corresponds to the three minor radio button options, on the Plain HTML sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1 to 3, where: 1 = Typical frameset 2 = Separate page 3 = Custom frameset

Sample XML

```
<WebFrameType>3</WebFrameType>
```

WebFrameWidth Element**Description**

Width of the frame that the HTML contents will be displayed in, as a percentage of the total browser width.

The WebFrameWidth element corresponds to the "Show in a frame beside the document" percentage field, on the Plain HTML sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1 to 100

Sample XML

```
<WebFrameWidth>30</WebFrameWidth>
```

WebHHSitemapTemplate Element

Description

Default sitemap file to be used as the HTML Help contents sitemap template. The default template *toc.hhc* can be found in the *Templates/HTML Help* folder. Choose **Edit** to open and edit the selected template in Microsoft HTML Help Workshop.

The WebHHSitemapTemplate element corresponds to the "Sitemap template" field, on the HTML Help sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<WebHHSitemapTemplate>..\Templates\HTML
Help\toc.hhc</WebHHSitemapTemplate>
```

WebHHTocTemplate Element

Description

Defines the HTML file to be used as the HTML Help contents template. The default template *hh_toc.htm* can be found in the *Templates/HTML Help* folder. Choose **Edit** to open and edit the selected template using Microsoft HTML Help Workshop.

The WebHHTocTemplate element corresponds to the "(HTML Help) Template" field, on the Plain HTML sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<WebHHTocTemplate>Templates_toc.htm</WebHHTocTemplate>
```

WebJHTocTemplate Element**Description**

Template file used when you publish your JavaHelp document output. The default template *jh_toc.xml* can be found in the *Templates/JavaHelp* folder.

The WebJHTocTemplate element corresponds to the "TOC template" field, on the JavaHelp sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<WebJHTocTemplate>..\Templates_toc.xml</WebJHTocTemplate>
```

WebMedia Element

Description

Sets a relationship to a Media object that defines the HTML page. A Table of Contents always starts a new HTML page, so you must select a Media object.

The WebMedia element corresponds to the "Media" field, on the Plain HTML sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<WebMedia>31</WebMedia>
```

WebOHTocTemplate Element

Description

Template file used when you publish your Oracle Help for Java document output. The default template *jh_toc.xml* can be found in the *Templates/JavaHelp* folder.

The WebOHTocTemplate element corresponds to the "TOC template" field, on the OracleHelp sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<WebOHTocTemplate>..\Templates\JavaHelp_toc.xml</WebOHTocTemplate>
```

WebTitle Element**Description**

Title used at the top of the TOC in the contents page of your HTML output.

The WebTitle element corresponds to the "Contents Title" field, on the Plain HTML sub-tab, on the HTML tab, of the Table Of Contents object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfContents

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<WebTitle>Contents</WebTitle>
```

TableOfFigures Element**Description**

A Table of Figures object, or TOF for short, represents a Table of Figures in the printed documentation only. Inclusion of Table of Figures object in a Book will automatically publish a professional Table of Figures in the Word document, based on any captions added to File objects in your Book.

The TableOfFigures element represents an Author-it Table Of Figures object, and contains all of its properties.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Values</u>
wordcount	Yes	Integer	>= 0

Parent Element

Objects

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
Object	No
PrintCaption	Yes
PrintLabelType	Yes
PrintMedia	Yes
PrintPageNumber	Yes
PrintRightAlign	Yes
PrintTitle	Yes

Sample XML

```
<TableOfFigures>
+ <Object>
  <PrintCaption>2</PrintCaption>
  <PrintLabelType>>true</PrintLabelType>
  <PrintMedia>31</PrintMedia>
  <PrintPageNumber>>true</PrintPageNumber>
  <PrintRightAlign>>true</PrintRightAlign>
  <PrintTitle>Table of Figures</PrintTitle>
</TableOfFigures>
```

Object Element

Description

The Object element is used by all Author-it object types, and contains the properties that are common to all objects. In Author-it these properties can be found on the General tab of each object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Book, File, Glossary, Hyperlink, Index, IndexEntry, Macro, Media, Style, TableOfContents, TableOfFigures, TitlePage, Topic

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
BasedOn	Yes	Once
CreatedBy	Yes	Once
CreatedDate	Yes	Once
Description	No	Once
FolderID	Yes	Once
GUID	No	Once
ID	No	Once
IncludelnHelp	Yes	Once
IncludelnPrint	Yes	Once
IncludelnWeb	Yes	Once
IsTemplate	Yes	Once
Key	Yes	Once
LocalizationID	Yes	Once
ModifiedBy	Yes	Once
ModifiedDate	Yes	Once
ReleaseStateID	Yes	Once
Status	Yes	Once
Type	Yes	Once
Version	Yes	Once

Sample XML

```
<Object>
  <BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
  <CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
  <CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
  <Description>Using Notepad</Description>
  <FolderID>3</FolderID>
  <GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
  <ID>164</ID>
  <IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
  <IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
  <IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
  <IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
  <Key>164</Key>
  <LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
  <ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
  <ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
  <ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
  <Status>1</Status>
  <Type>Book</Type>
  <Version>1</Version>
</Object>
```

BasedOn Element

Description

Allows you to choose the template on which the object will be based. The names that appear in this list are derived from the Description property of an object template. The object templates that appear may depend on your security access.

The BasedOn element corresponds to the "Base this object on and inherit properties from template" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (A valid template object ID)

Sample XML

```
<BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
```

CreatedBy Element

Description

The CreatedBy element contains the user name of the person who created the object. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	1 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
```

CreateDate Element

Description

The CreateDate element contains the date that the object was created. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<CreateDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreateDate>
```

Description Element

Description

Defines a descriptive name for the object. This description will be displayed as the name of the object throughout Author-it.

Note: You should enter a description that will make your objects easy to identify and find. In some object types, the description is copied to other properties when you first create the object. For example, in the Topic object the text is copied to the Print Heading, Help Heading, and the Web Heading properties.

The Description element corresponds to the "Description" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Description>Using Notepad</Description>
```

FolderID Element

Description

The FolderID element corresponds to the ID of the folder that the object is located in.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	≥ 1 (A valid folder ID)

Sample XML

```
<FolderID>3</FolderID>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains a globally unique identifier.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
```

ID Element

Description

The ID element contains the object ID. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<ID>164</ID>
```

IncludeInHelp Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInHelp element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Windows Help" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
```

IncludeInPrint Element**Description**

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInPrint element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Word Document" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
```

IncludeInWeb Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInWeb element corresponds to the "(Include object in) HTML" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
```

IsTemplate Element

Description

Determines if this object is an object template. If you check this property, the object becomes a template.

Note: You can only set this property when the object is first created, and if you have the required security access.

The IsTemplate element corresponds to the "Make this object an object template" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IsTemplate>false</IsTemplate>
```

Key Element

Description

Unique identifier for the object, which you cannot change. This number can be used for linking topics when you're producing context-sensitive Help. The number does not change if you create versions of the object.

The Key element corresponds to the "Object code" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Key>164</Key>
```

LocalizationID Element

Description

The LocalizationID element is used with localization libraries to define which localization an object belongs to (e.g. what language the object is in).

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
```

ModifiedBy Element

Description

The ModifiedBy element contains the user name of the user who last updated the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
```

ModifiedDate Element

Description

The ModifiedDate element contains the date and time the the object was last updated. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
```

ReleaseStateID Element

Description

The ReleaseStateID element contains the ID of the release state of the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
```

Status Element

Description

A read-only text property that contains the current status of the version of the object. A version of an object can move through several different states during its life cycle.

This field is shown in the "Object status" field, on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 2, where: 0=Inactive 1=Active 2=Redundant

Sample XML

```
<Status>1</Status>
```

Type Element

Description

The Type element contains the object type of the object. This field contains a string which represents which type of object this is.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Type>Book</Type>
```

Version Element

Description

Contains a read-only unique version number for each version of an object. The Object Code will not change from one version of an object to another.

This field is displayed in the "Object version" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Version>1</Version>
```

PrintCaption Element

Description

Allows you to choose what type of File Caption Label, defined in the File object, will be used to build the Table of Figures from.

The PrintCaption element corresponds to the "Figure label" field, on the Document tab, of the Table Of Figures object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfFigures

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	1 to 3, where: 1 = Equation 2 = Figure 3 = Table

Sample XML

```
<PrintCaption>2</PrintCaption>
```

PrintLabelType Element

Description

Determines if the label and its number (for example, "Figure 2") are inserted before the captions in the published Table of Figures.

The PrintLabelType element corresponds to the "Include label and number" field, on the Document tab, of the Table Of Figures object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfFigures

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintLabelType>true</PrintLabelType>
```

PrintMedia Element

Description

Sets a relationship to a Media object that defines the page setup and layout of the TOF section. A TOF always starts a new section, so you must select a Media object.

The PrintMedia element corresponds to the "Media" field, on the Document tab, of the Table Of Figures object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfFigures

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	>= 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<PrintMedia>31</PrintMedia>
```

PrintPageNumber Element

Description

Determines if page numbers are included in the Table of Figures of the Word document.

The PrintPageNumber element corresponds to the "Include page numbers" field, on the Document tab, of the Table Of Figures object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfFigures

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintPageNumber>true</PrintPageNumber>
```

PrintRightAlign Element

Description

Determines if the page numbers in the TOF of the Word document are right aligned. You must select TOF Include Page Number, for this to have any effect.

The PrintRightAlign element corresponds to the "Right align page numbers" field, on the Document tab, of the Table Of Figures object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfFigures

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintRightAlign>true</PrintRightAlign>
```

PrintTitle Element

Description

Defines a title for the TOF in the Word Document. This title has a style of "TOFTitle" automatically applied in the published Word document.

The PrintTitle element corresponds to the "TOF title" field, on the Document tab, of the Table Of Figures object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TableOfFigures

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<PrintTitle>Table of Figures</PrintTitle>
```

TitlePage Element



Description

The Title Page object is a document only object and represents the title page of a printed document. The inclusion of this object in a Book will cause a title page to be created in the printed document.

The TitlePage element represents an Author-it Title Page object, and contains all of its properties.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type	Values
wordcount	Yes	Integer	>= 0

Parent Element

Objects

Children

Element	Optional
Object	No
PrintFile	Yes
PrintIncludeByLine	Yes
PrintIncludeSubTitle	Yes
PrintIncludeSuperTitle	Yes
PrintIncludeTitle	Yes
PrintIncludeVersion	Yes
PrintMedia	Yes

Sample XML

```
<TitlePage>
+ <Object>
  <PrintFile>527</PrintFile>
  <PrintIncludeByLine inherited="true">true</PrintIncludeByLine>
  <PrintIncludeSubTitle>true</PrintIncludeSubTitle>
  <PrintIncludeSuperTitle
inherited="true">true</PrintIncludeSuperTitle>
  <PrintIncludeTitle inherited="true">true</PrintIncludeTitle>
  <PrintIncludeVersion inherited="true">true</PrintIncludeVersion>
  <PrintMedia inherited="true">32</PrintMedia>
</TitlePage>
```

Object Element

Description

The Object element is used by all Author-it object types, and contains the properties that are common to all objects. In Author-it these properties can be found on the General tab of each object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Book, File, Glossary, Hyperlink, Index, IndexEntry, Macro, Media, Style, TableOfContents, TableOfFigures, TitlePage, Topic

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
BasedOn	Yes	Once
CreatedBy	Yes	Once
CreatedDate	Yes	Once
Description	No	Once
FolderID	Yes	Once
GUID	No	Once
ID	No	Once
IncludeInHelp	Yes	Once
IncludeInPrint	Yes	Once
IncludeInWeb	Yes	Once
IsTemplate	Yes	Once
Key	Yes	Once
LocalizationID	Yes	Once
ModifiedBy	Yes	Once
ModifiedDate	Yes	Once
ReleaseStateID	Yes	Once
Status	Yes	Once
Type	Yes	Once
Version	Yes	Once

Sample XML

```

<Object>
  <BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
  <CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
  <CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
  <Description>Using Notepad</Description>
  <FolderID>3</FolderID>
  <GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
  <ID>164</ID>
  <IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
  <IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
  <IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
  <IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
  <Key>164</Key>
  <LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
  <ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
  <ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
  <ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
  <Status>1</Status>
  <Type>Book</Type>
  <Version>1</Version>
</Object>

```

BasedOn Element**Description**

Allows you to choose the template on which the object will be based. The names that appear in this list are derived from the Description property of an object template. The object templates that appear may depend on your security access.

The BasedOn element corresponds to the "Base this object on and inherit properties from template" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (A valid template object ID)

Sample XML

```

<BasedOn>67</BasedOn>

```

CreatedBy Element

Description

The CreatedBy element contains the user name of the person who created the object. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	1 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
```

CreatedDate Element

Description

The CreatedDate element contains the date that the object was created. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
```

Description Element

Description

Defines a descriptive name for the object. This description will be displayed as the name of the object throughout Author-it.

Note: You should enter a description that will make your objects easy to identify and find. In some object types, the description is copied to other properties when you first create the object. For example, in the Topic object the text is copied to the Print Heading, Help Heading, and the Web Heading properties.

The Description element corresponds to the "Description" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Description>Using Notepad</Description>
```

FolderID Element

Description

The FolderID element corresponds to the ID of the folder that the object is located in.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1 (A valid folder ID)

Sample XML

```
<FolderID>3</FolderID>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains a globally unique identifier.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
```

ID Element

Description

The ID element contains the object ID. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<ID>164</ID>
```

IncludeInHelp Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInHelp element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Windows Help" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
```

IncludeInPrint Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInPrint element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Word Document" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

Data Type	Range
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
```

IncludeInWeb Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInWeb element corresponds to the "(Include object in) HTML" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
```

IsTemplate Element

Description

Determines if this object is an object template. If you check this property, the object becomes a template.

Note: You can only set this property when the object is first created, and if you have the required security access.

The IsTemplate element corresponds to the "Make this object an object template" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IsTemplate>false</IsTemplate>
```

Key Element

Description

Unique identifier for the object, which you cannot change. This number can be used for linking topics when you're producing context-sensitive Help. The number does not change if you create versions of the object.

The Key element corresponds to the "Object code" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Key>164</Key>
```

LocalizationID Element

Description

The LocalizationID element is used with localization libraries to define which localization an object belongs to (e.g. what language the object is in).

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
```

ModifiedBy Element

Description

The ModifiedBy element contains the user name of the user who last updated the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
```

ModifiedDate Element

Description

The ModifiedDate element contains the date and time the the object was last updated. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
```

ReleaseStateID Element

Description

The ReleaseStateID element contains the ID of the release state of the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
```

Status Element

Description

A read-only text property that contains the current status of the version of the object. A version of an object can move through several different states during its life cycle.

This field is shown in the "Object status" field, on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 2, where: 0=Inactive 1=Active 2=Redundant

Sample XML

```
<Status>1</Status>
```

Type Element

Description

The Type element contains the object type of the object. This field contains a string which represents which type of object this is.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Type>Book</Type>
```

Version Element

Description

Contains a read-only unique version number for each version of an object. The Object Code will not change from one version of an object to another.

This field is displayed in the "Object version" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	≥ 1

Sample XML

```
<Version>1</Version>
```

PrintFile Element

Description

Allows you to set a relationship to a File object that defines the picture or graphic you want to insert on your title page.

The PrintFile element corresponds to the "Picture file" field, on the Document tab, of the Title Page object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TitlePage

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	>=0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<PrintFile>527</PrintFile>
```

PrintIncludeByLine Element

Description

Determines if the Document By Line from the Book being published is included in the Word document. If included, it has a style of "Byline" automatically applied in the published Word document.

The PrintIncludeByLine element corresponds to the "By line" field, on the Document tab, of the Title Page object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TitlePage

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintIncludeByLine inherited="true">true</PrintIncludeByLine>
```

PrintIncludeSubTitle Element**Description**

Determines if the Document Sub Title from the Book being published is included in the Word document. If included, it has a style of "SubTitle" automatically applied in the published Word document.

The PrintIncludeSubTitle element corresponds to the "Sub title" field, on the Document tab, of the Title Page object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TitlePage

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintIncludeSubTitle>true</PrintIncludeSubTitle>
```

PrintIncludeSuperTitle Element

Description

Determines if the Document Super Title from the Book being published is included in the Word document. If included, it has a style of "SuperTitle" automatically applied in the published Word document.

The PrintIncludeSuperTitle element corresponds to the "Super title" field, on the Document tab, of the Title Page object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TitlePage

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintIncludeSuperTitle inherited="true">true</PrintIncludeSuperTitle>
```

PrintIncludeTitle Element

Description

Determines if the Document Title from the Book being published is included in the Word document. If included, it has a style of "Title" automatically applied in the published Word document.

The PrintIncludeTitle element corresponds to the "Title" field, on the Document tab, of the Title Page object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TitlePage

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintIncludeTitle inherited="true">true</PrintIncludeTitle>
```

PrintIncludeVersion Element**Description**

Determines if the Document Version from the Book being published is included in the Word document. If included, it has a style of "Version" automatically applied in the published Word document.

The PrintIncludeVersion element corresponds to the "Version" field, on the Document tab, of the Title Page object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TitlePage

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<PrintIncludeVersion inherited="true">true</PrintIncludeVersion>
```

PrintMedia Element

Description

Sets a relationship to a Media object that defines the page setup and layout of the Title Page section. A Title Page always starts a new section, so you must select a Media object.

The PrintMedia element corresponds to the "Media" field, on the Document tab, of the Title Page object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

TitlePage

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<PrintMedia inherited="true">32</PrintMedia>
```

Topic Element

Description



A Topic object represents a concise chunk of text, usually no more than a few paragraphs. In a traditional document this would be the text under a specific heading or sub-heading in the document hierarchy.

Topic objects will make up the vast majority of all objects in a Book, and as such contain many properties defining how the Topic will be represented in both the printed and on-line documentation. Topics can mark the beginning of a new chapter and automatically create a mini table of contents. The heading of the Topic can be automatically formatted depending on its level in the hierarchy of the Book.

The Topic element represents an Author-it Topic object, and contains all of its properties.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Values</u>
wordcount	Yes	Integer	>= 0

Parent Element

Objects

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
Object	No
Headings	Yes
RelatedGroups	Yes
Text	Yes
VariableAssignments	Yes
PrintAutoNumber	Yes
PrintBreakType	Yes
PrintHeadingStyle	Yes
PrintMedia	Yes
PrintSuperHeading	Yes
HelpAlias	Yes
HelpContextID	Yes
HelpContextString	Yes
HelpCustomFootnotes	Yes
HelpHeadingStyle	Yes
HelpIncludeInSequence	Yes
HelpJumpMacro	Yes
HelpJumpType	Yes

Element	Optional
HelpJumpWindow	Yes
HelpNewSequence	Yes
HelpNonScrolling	Yes
HelpTopicMacro	Yes
WebFilename	Yes
WebMedia	Yes
WebStartNewPage	Yes
WebTitle	Yes
WebTOCImage	Yes

Sample XML

```

<Topic>
+ <Object>
- <Headings>
    <All>Run Modes</All>
</Headings>
- <RelatedGroups>
    - <RelatedGroup inherited="true">
        <Alignment>2</Alignment>
        <Children>>false</Children>
        <ColumnWidth>56 px</ColumnWidth>
        <Contents>>true</Contents>
        <ExcludeHeadingText>>true</ExcludeHeadingText>
        <Heading>Contents</Heading>
        <HeadingFile>1350</HeadingFile>
        <HeadingStyle>3</HeadingStyle>
        <IncludeInHelp>>false</IncludeInHelp>
        <IncludeInPrint>>false</IncludeInPrint>
        <IncludeInWeb>>true</IncludeInWeb>
        <Index>>false</Index>
        <ItemStyle>0</ItemStyle>
        <NextTopic>>false</NextTopic>
        <ParentTopic>>false</ParentTopic>
        <PopUp>>false</PopUp>
        1</Position>
        <PreviousTopic>>false</PreviousTopic>
        <RelatedGroupID>Contents</RelatedGroupID>
        <Sequence>6</Sequence>
        <Siblings>>false</Siblings>
    </RelatedGroup>
    + <RelatedGroup inherited="true">
    + <RelatedGroup inherited="true">
    + <RelatedGroup inherited="true">
    + <RelatedGroup inherited="true">
    + <RelatedGroup inherited="true">
    + <RelatedGroup inherited="true">
    </RelatedGroups>
- <Text>
    - <table rows="4" cols="3" width="8370">
        - <tr rowheight="0">
            - <td width="1710" borders="15" bordercolors="65793">
                - <p id="3">
                    <cs id="5">Mode</cs>
                </p>
            </td>
            - <td width="3900" borders="15" bordercolors="65793">
                - <p id="3">
                    <cs id="5">Messages</cs>
                </p>
            </td>
            - <td width="2760" borders="15" bordercolors="65793">
                - <p id="3">
                    <cs id="5">Logging</cs>
                </p>
            </td>
        </tr>
        - <tr rowheight="0">
            - <td width="1710" borders="15" bordercolors="65793">
                <p id="3">silent - default mode</p>
            </td>
            - <td width="3900" borders="15" bordercolors="65793">
                <p id="3">only fatal error messages displayed no recoverable
messages displayed</p>
            </td>
            - <td width="2760" borders="15" bordercolors="65793">
                <p id="3">only errors logged</p>
            </td>
        </tr>
    </table>

```

```

    </tr>
  </table>
  <p id="3">Verbose mode is turned on/off via the debug logging item
on the Help drop down menu. This is in the same place in all
modules.</p>
</Text>
<VariableAssignments />
<PrintAutoNumber inherited="true">0</PrintAutoNumber>
<PrintBreakType inherited="true">0</PrintBreakType>
<PrintHeadingStyle inherited="true">0</PrintHeadingStyle>
<PrintMedia inherited="true">0</PrintMedia>
<PrintSuperHeading inherited="true" />
<HelpAlias />
<HelpContextID inherited="true">0</HelpContextID>
<HelpContextString />
<HelpCustomFootnotes />
<HelpHeadingStyle inherited="true">18</HelpHeadingStyle>
<HelpIncludeInSequence inherited="true">>true</HelpIncludeInSequence>
<HelpJumpMacro inherited="true">0</HelpJumpMacro>
<HelpJumpType inherited="true">2</HelpJumpType>
<HelpJumpWindow inherited="true">35</HelpJumpWindow>
<HelpNewSequence inherited="true">>false</HelpNewSequence>
<HelpNonScrolling inherited="true">>true</HelpNonScrolling>
<HelpTopicMacro>0</HelpTopicMacro>
<WebFilename />
<WebMedia inherited="true">36</WebMedia>
<WebStartNewPage inherited="true">>true</WebStartNewPage>
<WebTitle />
<WebTOCImage inherited="true">(auto)</WebTOCImage>
</Topic>

```

Object Element

Description

The Object element is used by all Author-it object types, and contains the properties that are common to all objects. In Author-it these properties can be found on the General tab of each object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Book, File, Glossary, Hyperlink, Index, IndexEntry, Macro, Media, Style, TableOfContents, TableOfFigures, TitlePage, Topic

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
BasedOn	Yes	Once
CreatedBy	Yes	Once
CreatedDate	Yes	Once
Description	No	Once

Element	Optional	Occurs
FolderID	Yes	Once
GUID	No	Once
ID	No	Once
IncludeInHelp	Yes	Once
IncludeInPrint	Yes	Once
IncludeInWeb	Yes	Once
IsTemplate	Yes	Once
Key	Yes	Once
LocalizationID	Yes	Once
ModifiedBy	Yes	Once
ModifiedDate	Yes	Once
ReleaseStateID	Yes	Once
Status	Yes	Once
Type	Yes	Once
Version	Yes	Once

Sample XML

```

<Object>
  <BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
  <CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
  <CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
  <Description>Using Notepad</Description>
  <FolderID>3</FolderID>
  <GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
  <ID>164</ID>
  <IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
  <IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
  <IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
  <IsTemplate>>false</IsTemplate>
  <Key>164</Key>
  <LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
  <ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
  <ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
  <ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
  <Status>1</Status>
  <Type>Book</Type>
  <Version>1</Version>
</Object>

```

BasedOn Element

Description

Allows you to choose the template on which the object will be based. The names that appear in this list are derived from the Description property of an object template. The object templates that appear may depend on your security access.

The BasedOn element corresponds to the "Base this object on and inherit properties from template" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (A valid template object ID)

Sample XML

```
<BasedOn>67</BasedOn>
```

CreatedBy Element

Description

The CreatedBy element contains the user name of the person who created the object. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	1 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<CreatedBy>(supervisor)</CreatedBy>
```

CreatedDate Element

Description

The CreatedDate element contains the date that the object was created. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<CreatedDate>2003-01-08T16:15:44</CreatedDate>
```

Description Element

Description

Defines a descriptive name for the object. This description will be displayed as the name of the object throughout Author-it.

Note: You should enter a description that will make your objects easy to identify and find. In some object types, the description is copied to other properties when you first create the object. For example, in the Topic object the text is copied to the Print Heading, Help Heading, and the Web Heading properties.

The Description element corresponds to the "Description" field on the General tab of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Description>Using Notepad</Description>
```

FolderID Element

Description

The FolderID element corresponds to the ID of the folder that the object is located in.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1 (A valid folder ID)

Sample XML

```
<FolderID>3</FolderID>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains a globally unique identifier.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>114C7FB19D3440E8894265E02C16A564</GUID>
```

ID Element**Description**

The ID element contains the object ID. This field is not displayed in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<ID>164</ID>
```

IncludeInHelp Element**Description**

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInHelp element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Windows Help" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInHelp inherited="true">true</IncludeInHelp>
```

IncludeInPrint Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInPrint element corresponds to the "(Include object in) Word Document" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInPrint inherited="true">true</IncludeInPrint>
```

IncludeInWeb Element

Description

Determines the published outputs the object will be included in.

- ▶▶ **Print:** applies to Word and PDF
- ▶▶ **Help:** applies to Windows Help

Web: applies to HTML Pages, XHTML Pages, HTML Help, JavaHelp, and Oracle Help for Java. The IncludeInWeb element corresponds to the "(Include object in) HTML" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInWeb inherited="true">true</IncludeInWeb>
```

IsTemplate Element

Description

Determines if this object is an object template. If you check this property, the object becomes a template.

Note: You can only set this property when the object is first created, and if you have the required security access.

The IsTemplate element corresponds to the "Make this object an object template" checkbox on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<IsTemplate>false</IsTemplate>
```

Key Element

Description

Unique identifier for the object, which you cannot change. This number can be used for linking topics when you're producing context-sensitive Help. The number does not change if you create versions of the object.

The Key element corresponds to the "Object code" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Key>164</Key>
```

LocalizationID Element

Description

The LocalizationID element is used with localization libraries to define which localization an object belongs to (e.g. what language the object is in).

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<LocalizationID>0</LocalizationID>
```

ModifiedBy Element

Description

The ModifiedBy element contains the user name of the user who last updated the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedBy>(supervisor)</ModifiedBy>
```

ModifiedDate Element

Description

The ModifiedDate element contains the date and time the the object was last updated. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<ModifiedDate>2003-01-08T17:00:17</ModifiedDate>
```

ReleaseStateID Element

Description

The ReleaseStateID element contains the ID of the release state of the object. This field can be seen in the object list in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<ReleaseStateID>0</ReleaseStateID>
```

Status Element

Description

A read-only text property that contains the current status of the version of the object. A version of an object can move through several different states during its life cycle.

This field is shown in the "Object status" field, on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 2, where: 0=Inactive 1=Active 2=Redundant

Sample XML

```
<Status>1</Status>
```

Type Element

Description

The Type element contains the object type of the object. This field contains a string which represents which type of object this is.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 50 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Type>Book</Type>
```

Version Element

Description

Contains a read-only unique version number for each version of an object. The Object Code will not change from one version of an object to another.

This field is displayed in the "Object version" field on the General tab of the object in Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Object

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 1

Sample XML

```
<Version>1</Version>
```

Headings Element

Description

Defines the headings that will appear in each output for this topic.

The Headings element contains either the PrintHeading, HelpHeading, and WebHeading elements (if they do not contain the same content), or the All element (if they are all the same).

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Topic

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
All	Yes	Once
PrintHeading	Yes	Once
HelpHeading	Yes	Once
WebHeading	Yes	Once

Sample XML

```
<Headings>
  <All>Run Modes</All>
</Headings>
```

- OR -

```
<Headings>
  <PrintHeading>Propagate Object</PrintHeading>
  <HelpHeading>Propagate to Remote Users</HelpHeading>
  <WebHeading>Propagate Object to Remote Users</WebHeading>
</Headings>
```

All Element

Description

Defines the Heading that will appear in all output formats for this topic.

The All element will contain the topic heading, when it is the same on the Document, Windows Help and HTML tabs.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Headings

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<All>Run Modes</All>
```

PrintHeading Element

Description

Defines the Heading that will appear in the document for this topic.

The PrintHeading element corresponds to the "Heading" field, on the Document tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Headings

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<PrintHeading>Propagate Object</PrintHeading>
```

HelpHeading Element

Description

Defines the Heading that will appear in Windows Help for this topic.

The HelpHeading element corresponds to the "Heading" field, on the Windows Help tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Headings

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<HelpHeading>Propagate to Remote Users</HelpHeading>
```

WebHeading Element

Description

Defines the Heading that will appear in the HTML page for this Topic.

The WebHeading element corresponds to the "Heading" field, on the HTML tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Headings

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<WebHeading>Propagate Object to Remote Users</WebHeading>
```

RelatedGroups Element**Description**

This is a list of all the related topic groups in this topic. If the word "(inherited)" appears at the end of the group name then that group is inherited from the template that this topic is based on. This list contains 2 columns:

- ▶▶ **Group Heading:** displays the name of the group. This name cannot be changed. You must delete the group and create a new group to change the name.
- ▶▶ **Sequence:** determines the order that one group has to others.

Click on a group to display its properties.

The RelatedGroups element corresponds to the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object. This element contains a number of RelatedGroup elements.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Topic

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
RelatedGroup	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```

<RelatedGroups>
- <RelatedGroup inherited="true">
  <Alignment>2</Alignment>
  <Children>>false</Children>
  <ColumnWidth>56 px</ColumnWidth>
  <Contents>>true</Contents>
  <ExcludeHeadingText>>true</ExcludeHeadingText>
  <Heading>Contents</Heading>
  <HeadingFile>1350</HeadingFile>
  <HeadingStyle>3</HeadingStyle>
  <IncludeInHelp>>false</IncludeInHelp>
  <IncludeInPrint>>false</IncludeInPrint>
  <IncludeInWeb>>true</IncludeInWeb>
  <Index>>false</Index>
  <ItemStyle>0</ItemStyle>
  <NextTopic>>false</NextTopic>
  <ParentTopic>>false</ParentTopic>
  <PopUp>>false</PopUp>
  1</Position>
  <PreviousTopic>>false</PreviousTopic>
  <RelatedGroupID>Contents</RelatedGroupID>
  <Sequence>6</Sequence>
  <Siblings>>false</Siblings>
</RelatedGroup>
</RelatedGroups>

```

RelatedGroup Element

Description

The RelatedGroup element corresponds to an item in the related groups list, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

RelatedGroups

Children

Element	Optional
Alignment	Yes
Children	Yes
ColumnWidth	Yes
Contents	Yes
ExcludeHeadingText	Yes
Heading	No

Element	Optional
HeadingFile	Yes
HeadingStyle	Yes
IncludeInHelp	Yes
IncludeInPrint	Yes
IncludeInWeb	Yes
Index	Yes
ItemStyle	Yes
NextTopic	Yes
ParentTopic	Yes
PopUp	Yes
Position	Yes
PreviousTopic	Yes
RelatedGroupID	No
Sequence	Yes
Siblings	Yes

Sample XML

```

<RelatedGroup inherited="true">
  <Alignment>2</Alignment>
  <Children>>false</Children>
  <ColumnWidth>56 px</ColumnWidth>
  <Contents>>true</Contents>
  <ExcludeHeadingText>>true</ExcludeHeadingText>
  <Heading>Contents</Heading>
  <HeadingFile>1350</HeadingFile>
  <HeadingStyle>3</HeadingStyle>
  <IncludeInHelp>>false</IncludeInHelp>
  <IncludeInPrint>>false</IncludeInPrint>
  <IncludeInWeb>>true</IncludeInWeb>
  <Index>>false</Index>
  <ItemStyle>0</ItemStyle>
  <NextTopic>>false</NextTopic>
  <ParentTopic>>false</ParentTopic>
  <PopUp>>false</PopUp>
  1</Position>
  <PreviousTopic>>false</PreviousTopic>
  <RelatedGroupID>Contents</RelatedGroupID>
  <Sequence>6</Sequence>
  <Siblings>>false</Siblings>
</RelatedGroup>

```

Alignment Element

Description

Determines how this groups will be aligned to other groups in the same Group Position in the published output. There are 2 alignment options:

- ▶▶ **Vertically** places this group directly below other groups in this position.
- ▶▶ **Horizontally** places this group beside other groups in this position.

The order of groups to each other is determined by the Related Group Sequence.

The Alignment element corresponds to the "Align this group" field, on the Position sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1 or 2, where: 1 = Vertically 2 = Horizontally

Sample XML

```
<Alignment>2</Alignment>
```

Children Element

Description

Determines if all the children of this Topic in the contents of a Book are added to the related group at publishing time.

The Children element corresponds to the "Child topics" field, on the Special Links sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false

Sample XML

```
<Children>false</Children>
```

ColumnWidth Element

Description

The ColumnWidth element corresponds to the "Column width" field, on the Position sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 10 characters long. (auto) x units

Sample XML

```
<ColumnWidth>56 px</ColumnWidth>
```

Contents Element

Description

Determines if the Table of Contents of the Book is added to the related group at publishing time.

When used in HTML and as part of Author-it's Plain HTML Table of Contents, clicking the link displays the correct contents page expanded out to the correct branch. So if you come to a page through the search or index you can quickly find its context in the contents.

The Contents link will not be created in HTML Help, JavaHelp or Oracle Help for Java as the contents is already displayed as part of their native functionality.

The Contents element corresponds to the "Book contents" field, on the Special Links sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false

Sample XML

```
<Contents>true</Contents>
```

ExcludeHeadingText Element

Description

Sets a relationship to a File Object that will be used as graphic and placed before the Related Group Heading in the published output. If you only want the graphic and do not want the heading to appear then select the **Do not include the heading text** checkbox.

The ExcludeHeadingText element corresponds to the "Do not include the heading text" field, on the Appearance sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false

Sample XML

```
<ExcludeHeadingText>true</ExcludeHeadingText>
```

Heading Element

Description

This specifies the name and heading of the related group. This field can only be used to specify the name of a new related group. Existing group names cannot be changed. You can enter a name up to 255 characters long.

The Heading element corresponds to the Group Heading field, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<Heading>Contents</Heading>
```

HeadingFile Element

Description

Sets a relationship to a File Object that will be used as graphic and placed before the Related Group Heading in the published output. If you only want the graphic and do not want the heading to appear then select the **Do not include the heading text** checkbox.

The HeadingFile element corresponds to the "Use this graphic with the heading" field, on the Appearance sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<HeadingFile>1350</HeadingFile>
```

HeadingStyle Element

Description

Sets a relationship to the Style object that will be used to format the Related Group Heading in the published output.

Tip: If you set this to "(auto)", the Related Group Heading will be set to the style "Related Heading" if that style can be found in the Library.

The HeadingStyle element corresponds to the "For the group heading use" field, on the Appearance sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<HeadingStyle>3</HeadingStyle>
```

IncludeInHelp Element

Description

Determines what published output type the selected related group will be included in.

The IncludeInHelp element corresponds to the "(Include this group in) Window Help" field, on the Appearance sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInHelp>false</IncludeInHelp>
```

IncludeInPrint Element

Description

Determines what published output type the selected related group will be included in.

The IncludeInPrint element corresponds to the "(Include this group in) Word document" field, on the Appearance sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInPrint>false</IncludeInPrint>
```

IncludeInWeb Element

Description

Determines what published output type the selected related group will be included in.

The IncludeInWeb element corresponds to the "(Include this group in) HTML/HTML Help" field, on the Appearance sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false

Sample XML

```
<IncludeInWeb>true</IncludeInWeb>
```

Index Element**Description**

Determines if the Index of the Book is added to the related group at publishing time.

The Index element corresponds to the "Book index" field, on the Special Links sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false

Sample XML

```
<Index>false</Index>
```

ItemStyle Element

Description

Sets a relationship to the Style object that will be used to format each of the links to the related topics defined in the related group.

Tip: If you set this to "(auto)", the item will be formatted with the style "Related Items" if that style can be found in the Library.

The ItemStyle element corresponds to the "(Styles) For the items use" field, on the Appearance sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<ItemStyle>0</ItemStyle>
```

NextTopic Element

Description

Determines if the next Topic in the contents of a Book is added to the related group at publishing time. The next topic can be at a higher or lower level.

The NextTopic element corresponds to the "Next topic" field, on the Special Links sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false

Sample XML

```
<NextTopic>false</NextTopic>
```

ParentTopic Element

Description

Determines if the parent of this Topic in the contents of a Book is added to the related group at publishing time.

The ParentTopic element corresponds to the "Parent topic" field, on the Special Links sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false

Sample XML

```
<ParentTopic>false</ParentTopic>
```

PopUp Element

Description

Determines if the Related Group is displayed as a popup list in Windows Help. If selected only the Related Group heading and/or the Related Group Graphic is displayed and a popup list of the related topics is displayed when selected. This property only applies to Windows Help and is ignored in other outputs.

The PopUp element corresponds to the "Display list as a popup in WinHelp" field, on the Appearance sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false

Sample XML

```
<PopUp>false</PopUp>
```

Position Element

Description

Determine where this group will be placed in the published outputs relative to the heading and the topic text. There are 3 positions:

- ▶▶ **Above the topic heading** places the group immediately before the topic heading.
- ▶▶ **Below the topic heading** places the group immediately below the topic heading and above the topic text.
- ▶▶ **Below the topic text** places the group immediately below the topic text.

The Position element corresponds to the "Place this group" options, on the Position sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1 to 3, where: 1 = Above the topic heading 2 = Below the topic heading 3 = Below the topic text

Sample XML

```
1</Position>
```

PreviousTopic Element

Description

Determines if the previous Topic in the contents of a Book is added to the related group at publishing time. The previous topic can be at a higher or lower level.

The PreviousTopic element corresponds to the "Previous topic" field, on the Special Links sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false

Sample XML

```
<PreviousTopic>false</PreviousTopic>
```

RelatedGroupID Element

Description

The RelatedGroupID element is not displayed in Author-it, and is for internal use only. This element is usually set to the same value as the Heading element. This element must not be translated.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<RelatedGroupID>Contents</RelatedGroupID>
```

Sequence Element

Description

Determines the sequence in which a related group appears in this topic. You can enter a numerical value in this field.

The Sequence element corresponds to the "Sequence" field, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<Sequence>6</Sequence>
```

Siblings Element

Description

Determines if all the siblings of this Topic in the contents of a Book are added to the related group at publishing time.

The Siblings element corresponds to the "Sibling topics" field, on the Special Links sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false

Sample XML

```
<Siblings>>false</Siblings>
```

SpecificLinks Element

Description

Sets a relationship between this Topic and one or more other Topic, Hypertext Link, or Index Entry objects that will be included in this related group. Hypertext Link and Index Entry objects are resolved down to the Topics they are linked to.

Note: If any of the specified Topics are not part of this Book they will be ignored at publishing time.

The SpecificLinks element corresponds to the "Specific Links" sub-tab sub-tab, on the Related Topics tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

RelatedGroup

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
Relations	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
- <SpecificLinks>
  - <Relation>
    <ID>237</ID>
  </Relation>
</SpecificLinks>
```

*Relation Element***Description**

The Relation element contains an ID element which represents an Author-it object to which the parent has a relationship.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

HelpMultiBookTargets, HyperLinksTargets, Targets

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>
ID	No

Sample XML

```
<HyperLinksTargets>
- <Relation>
  <ID>3543</ID>
</Relation>
</HyperLinksTargets>
```

*Relation Element***Description**

The ID element is part of the relations structure, and contains a number which represents an Author-it object to which the parent has a relationship.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Relation

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0, an object id

Sample XML

```
<HyperLinksTargets>
- <Relation>
  <ID>3543</ID>
</Relation>
</HyperLinksTargets>
```

Text Element

Description

A rich text property that allows you to enter the text of the Topic. You can then set relationships to Style objects to define the typographical presentation of the text, to Hypertext Link objects to define links between Topics, and to File objects for inserting graphics, pictures and other files in the published output.

The Text corresponds to the text field, on the Topic Text tab, of the Topic object. This element is the root of the Topic/Text structure.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Topic

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
p	Yes	Zero to many times
table	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```

<Text>
- <table rows="4" cols="3" width="8370">
  - <tr rowheight="0">
    - <td width="1710" borders="15" bordercolors="65793">
      - <p id="3">
        <cs id="5">Mode</cs>
      </p>
    </td>
    - <td width="3900" borders="15" bordercolors="65793">
      - <p id="3">
        <cs id="5">Messages</cs>
      </p>
    </td>
    - <td width="2760" borders="15" bordercolors="65793">
      - <p id="3">
        <cs id="5">Logging</cs>
      </p>
    </td>
  </tr>
  - <tr rowheight="0">
    - <td width="1710" borders="15" bordercolors="65793">
      <p id="3">silent - default mode</p>
    </td>
    - <td width="3900" borders="15" bordercolors="65793">
      <p id="3">only fatal error messages displayed no recoverable
messages displayed</p>
    </td>
    - <td width="2760" borders="15" bordercolors="65793">
      <p id="3">only errors logged</p>
    </td>
  </tr>
</table>
<p id="3">Silent mode is the default mode</p>
<p id="3">Verbose mode is turned on/off via the debug logging item on
the Help drop down menu. This is in the same place in all modules.</p>
</Text>

```

p Element

Description

The p element represents a paragraph in the topic text. This element may contain text, and a number of child elements.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
id	No	Integer > 0

Parent Element

Text

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
br	Yes	Zero to many times
cs	Yes	Zero to many times
fref	Yes	Zero to many times
href	Yes	Zero to many times
mref	Yes	Zero to many times
nbd	Yes	Zero to many times
nbs	Yes	Zero to many times
tref	Yes	Zero to many times

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 4000 characters long.

Sample XML

```

<Text>
  <p id="1065">Description</p>
  - <p id="3">
    <href id="263">PrintSubTitle</href>
    hyperlink
  </p>
  - <p id="3">
    Text with
    <br />
    soft
    <br />
    line breaks.
  </p>
  - <p id="1065">
    Attributes
  </p>
  - <table rows="2" cols="2" width="4230">
    - <tr rowheight="0">
      - <td width="2520" bordercolors="65793">
        <p id="21">Attribute Name</p>
      </td>
      - <td width="1710" bordercolors="65793">
        <p id="21">Optional</p>
      </td>
    </tr>
    - <tr rowheight="0">
      - <td width="2520" bordercolors="65793">
        <p id="15">inherited</p>
      </td>
      - <td width="1710" bordercolors="65793">
        <p id="15">Yes</p>
      </td>
    </tr>
  </table>
  - <p id="3">
    Non
    <nbs />
    breaking
    <nbs />
    space.
  </p>
  - <p id="3">
    Non
    <nbd />
    breaking
    <nbd />
    dash.
  </p>
  <p id="12">List item one</p>
  <p id="12">List item two</p>
  - <p id="3">
    File object:
    <fref id="2718" />
  </p>
  - <p id="3">
    Macro object:
    <mref id="510">Close Main Window</mref>
  </p>
  - <p id="3">
    Embedded topic:
    <tref id="7541" />
  </p>
</Text>

```

br Element

Description

The br element represents a soft line break in a paragraph. This is an empty element with no attributes.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

p

Values

None

Sample XML

```
<p id="3">  
  Text with  
  <br />  
  soft  
  <br />  
  line breaks.  
</p>
```

cs Element

Description

The cs element represents a character style in a paragraph. This element contains text.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
id	No	Integer > 0. An Object ID.

Parent Element

p

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 4000 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<p id="3">
  Character
  <cs id="3264">style</cs>
  example.
</p>
```

fref Element**Description**

The fref element represents a file object in a paragraph. This is an empty element.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
id	No	Integer > 0. An Object ID

Parent Element

p

Values

None

Sample XML

```
<p id="3">
  File object:
  <fref id="2718" />
</p>
```

tref Element**Description**

The tref element represents an embedded topic object in a paragraph. This is an empty element.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
id	No	Integer > 0. An Object ID

Parent Element

p

Values

None

Sample XML

```
<p id="3">
  Embedded topic:
  <tref id="7541" />
</p>
```

href Element

Description

The href element represents a hyperlink object in a paragraph. This element may contain text, and a cs child element.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
id	No	Integer > 0. An Object ID.

Parent Element

p

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
cs	Yes	Zero to many times

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 4000 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<p id="3">
  <href id="263">Click
    <cs id="462">here</cs>
  </href>
  for the hyperlink
</p>
```

mref Element

Description

The mref element represents a macro object in a paragraph. This element may contain text, and a cs child element.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
id	No	Integer > 0. An Object ID.

Parent Element

p

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
cs	Yes	Zero to many times

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 4000 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<p id="3">
  Macro object:
  <mref id="510">
    Close
    <cs id="3264">Main</cs>
    Window
  </mref>
</p>
```

nbid Element

Description

The nbid element represents a non breaking dash in a paragraph. This is an empty element with no attributes.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

p

Values

None

Sample XML

```
<p id="3">  
  Non  
  <nbid />  
  breaking  
  <nbid />  
  dash.  
</p>
```

nbs Element

Description

The nbs element represents a non breaking space in a paragraph. This is an empty element with no attributes.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

p

Values

None

Sample XML

```
<p id="3">  
  Non  
  <nbs />  
  breaking  
  <nbs />  
  space.  
</p>
```

table Element

Description

The table element represents a table in the topic text. This element contains one or more tr elements, and no text.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
rows	No	Integer > 0
cols	No	Integer > 0
width	No	Integer > 0. Units in twips

Parent Element

Text

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
tr	No	One to many times

Values

None

Sample XML

```
<table rows="2" cols="2" width="4230">
- <tr rowheight="0">
  - <td width="2520" bordercolors="65793">
    <p id="21">Attribute Name</p>
  </td>
  - <td width="1710" bordercolors="65793">
    <p id="21">Optional</p>
  </td>
</tr>
- <tr rowheight="0">
  - <td width="2520" bordercolors="65793">
    <p id="15">inherited</p>
  </td>
  - <td width="1710" bordercolors="65793">
    <p id="15">Yes</p>
  </td>
</tr>
</table>
```

tr Element

Description

The tr element represents a row in a table. This element contains one or more td elements, and no text.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
rowheight	No	Integer >= 0. Units in twips. 0 = auto (based on the font height).
header	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

table

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
td	No	One to many times

Values

None

Sample XML

```
<table rows="2" cols="1" width="2520">
- <tr rowheight="0" header="true">
  - <td width="2520" bordercolors="65793">
    <p id="21">Attribute Name</p>
  </td>
</tr>
- <tr rowheight="0">
  - <td width="2520" bordercolors="65793">
    <p id="15">inherited</p>
  </td>
</tr>
</table>
```

*td Element***Description**

The td element represents a cell in a table. This element may contain p elements and table elements.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
width	No	Integer >= 0. Units in twips
borders	Yes	String. 0 = none, 15 = thin, 30 = medium, 45 = thick. *
bordercolors	Yes	String. Units in OLE color. *
bgcolor	Yes	Integer >= 0. Units in OLE color.
rowspan	Yes	Integer > 0
colspan	Yes	Integer > 0
shading	Yes	Integer 0 to 100

* Either a single number when all four borders are the same, or 4 comma separated numbers representing left, right, top, bottom borders.

Parent Element

table

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
p	Yes	Zero to many times
table	Yes	Zero to many times

Values

None

Sample XML

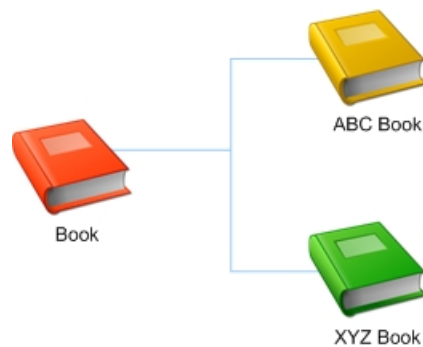
```
<tr rowheight="0">  
- <td width="1080" bordercolors="65793">  
  <p id="3">one</p>  
</td>  
- <td width="1170" borders="45" bordercolors="65793">  
  <p id="3">two</p>  
</td>  
</tr>
```

VariableAssignments Element

Description

The VariableAssignments element contains all variable assignments for the parent object.

Variables act as "placeholders" in your Topics that can be filled with changeable data. Say for example, you need to produce a document for your many different clients. You can save time by producing one document, and then changing the Variables (company name, logo, and so on...) to make personalized versions of the document.



Variables are used in Topics. Their names appear between <angle brackets>. The value of a Variable is only displayed when the final output is published.

You can view a full list of the variables available in the library from the Author-it Button menu, or view variables that are used by objects from ribbon options in the main window or Editor.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Book, Topic

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
VariableAssignment	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<VariableAssignments>
- <VariableAssignment>
  <ID>17</ID>
  <Name></Name>
  <Value>MyCompany Ltd</Value>
  <ValueObject>0</ValueObject>
  <Style>-1</Style>
</VariableAssignment>
</VariableAssignments>
```

VariableAssignment Element

Description

The VariableAssignment element is part of the VariableAssignments structure.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

VariableAssignments

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
ID	No	Once
Name	No	Once
Value	No	Once

Element	Optional	Occurs
ValueObject	No	Once
Style	No	Once

Sample XML

```
<VariableAssignment>
  <ID>17</ID>
  <Name></Name>
  <Value>MyCompany Ltd</Value>
  <ValueObject>0</ValueObject>
  <Style>-1</Style>
</VariableAssignment>
```

ID Element

Description

The ID element contains the ID of the variable that has been assigned to the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

VariableAssignment

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	>=1, a variable id

Sample XML

```
<ID>17</ID>
```

Name Element

Description

The Name element contains the name of the variable that has been assigned to the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

VariableAssignment

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Name></Name>
```

Value Element

Description

The Value element contains the value of the variable that has been assigned to the object. If the variable contains a file object then this element will contain the file object description.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

VariableAssignment

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 4000 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Value>MyCompany Ltd</Value>
```

ValueObject Element

Description

The ValueObject element contains the ID of the file object of the variable that has been assigned to the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

VariableAssignment

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>=0, a file object id

Sample XML

```
<ValueObject>231</ValueObject>
```

Style Element

Description

The Style element contains the style of the Style of the variable that has been assigned to the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

VariableAssignment

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= -1, where -1 = inherited, otherwise an object id

Sample XML

```
<Style>-1</Style>
```

PrintAutoNumber Element

Description

Allows you to select the type of automatic numbering that will be inserted just after Document Super Heading.

Note: No numbering will be inserted if you have not entered a super heading.

The PrintAutoNumber element corresponds to the "Super headings" list, on the Document tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 8, where: 0 = (none) 1 = 1,2,3 ... 2 = a,b,c ... 3 = A,B,C ... 4 = i,ii,iii ... 5 = I,II,III ... 6 = 1st, 2nd, 3rd ... 7 = One, Two, Three ... 8 = First, Second, Third

Sample XML

```
<PrintAutoNumber inherited="true">0</PrintAutoNumber>
```

PrintBreakType Element

Description

Allows you to choose the type of break that will be inserted into the document just before this Topic. If you choose "Section Break", you must select a Media object to define the next section.

The PrintBreakType element corresponds to the "Insert break" field, on the Document tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 3, where: 0 = (none) 1 = Page Break 2 = Column Break 3 = Section Break

Sample XML

```
<PrintBreakType inherited="true">0</PrintBreakType>
```

PrintHeadingStyle Element

Description

Sets a relationship to the Style object that the Document Heading uses.

Tip: If you set this to "(auto)", the Document Heading will be set to the styles "Heading 1", "Heading 2", "Heading 3", etc. taken from the level of the Topic in the contents of the Book.

The PrintHeadingStyle element corresponds to the "Style" field, on the Document tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<PrintHeadingStyle inherited="true">0</PrintHeadingStyle>
```

PrintMedia Element**Description**

Sets a relationship to a Media object that defines the page setup and layout of the new section.

Note: This can only be selected when Insert Break is set to "Section Break".

The PrintMedia element corresponds to the "Media" field, on the Document tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<PrintMedia inherited="true">0</PrintMedia>
```

PrintSuperHeading Element

Description

Defines the Super Heading that will appear in the document for this topic. The super heading appears above the Document Heading. Author-it automatically applies the "SuperHeading" style in the Word document.

The PrintSuperHeading element corresponds to the "Super heading" field, on the Document tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<PrintSuperHeading inherited="true" />
```

HelpAlias Element

Description

Allows you to define an alias for a Help Topic. This alias can be used when linking in to your help file.

The HelpAlias element corresponds to the "Alias name" field, on the Linking sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<HelpAlias>GetH</HelpAlias>
```

HelpContextID Element**Description**

Allows you to define an alternative context ID for the topic. By default, the context ID is the *Object Code* of the topic. This context ID can be used when linking in to your help file.

The HelpContextID element corresponds to the "Context ID" field, on the Linking sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	-2147483647 to 2147483648

Sample XML

```
<HelpContextID inherited="true">0</HelpContextID>
```

HelpContextString Element

Description

Allows you to define an alternative context string for the topic. By default, the context string is the *Object Code* of the topic prefixed with the *letter* "O", for example, "O123". This context string can be used when linking in to your help file.

The HelpContextString element corresponds to the "Context String" field, on the Linking sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<HelpContextString>MainPage<HelpContextString>
```

HelpCustomFootnotes Element

Description

Shows a list of custom footnotes for this help topic. This list has two columns:

- ▶▶ **Type:** the type of footnote to create
- ▶▶ **Data:** the data you want to appear in the footnote

Each entry will create a footnote of the Type specified using the Data specified in the topic of the published windows help system.

Choose **Add** to create a new entry, **Remove** to delete the selected entry, or **Remove All** to clear the list.

The HelpCustomFootnotes element corresponds to the list on the CustomFootnotes sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
HelpFootnote	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<HelpCustomFootnotes>
- <HelpFootnote>
  <Type>$</Type>
  <Data>Introduction to AuthorIT</Data>
</HelpFootnote>
- <HelpFootnote>
  <Type>K</Type>
  <Data>documentation authoring</Data>
</HelpFootnote>
</HelpCustomFootnotes>
```

HelpFootnote Element

Description

The HelpFootnote element represents a custom footnote item, and contains the Type and Data elements.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

HelpCustomFootnotes

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
Type	No	Once
Data	No	Once

Sample XML

```
<HelpFootnote>
  <Type>$</Type>
  <Data>Introduction to AuthorIT</Data>
</HelpFootnote>
```

Type Element

Description

The Type element contains the custom mark for the footnote.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

HelpCustomFootnote

Values

Data Type	Range
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Type>$</Type>
```

Data Element

Description

The Data element contains the text (title, keywords, context string) for the footnote.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

HelpCustomFootnote

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Data>Introduction to AuthorIT</Data>
```

HelpHeadingStyle Element

Description

Sets a relationship to the Style object that the Help Heading uses.

The HelpHeadingStyle element corresponds to the "Style" field, on the Windows Help tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<HelpHeadingStyle inherited="true">18</HelpHeadingStyle>
```

HelpIncludeInSequence Element

Description

Determines if this Topic is included in the current browse sequence. The current browse sequence is set by the last topic to start a new browse sequence.

The HelpIncludeInSequence element corresponds to the "Include in browse sequence" field, on the Windows Help tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpIncludeInSequence inherited="true">true</HelpIncludeInSequence>
```

HelpJumpMacro Element

Description

Allows you to choose how this Topic will be displayed when you jump to it from the Help Contents. You can choose:

- ▶▶ **Display as a Popup:** the Topic will be displayed as a pop-up.
- ▶▶ **Show only as a heading:** no topic will be created in Windows Help, only an entry in the contents is created.
- ▶▶ **Display in the Default Window:** the Topic will be displayed in the window defined in Topic Help Window.
- ▶▶ **Do not show in contents:** a topic is created in the Windows Help, but this topic will not appear in the contents. This can be used for What's This Help topics and other topics that you don't want in the contents.

Execute this Macro: allows you to set a relationship to a Macro Procedure object to be executed. A topic is still created but the Macro may not necessarily display the topic. The HelpJumpMacro element corresponds to the "Execute this Macro" field, on the Display and Contents sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<HelpJumpMacro inherited="true">0</HelpJumpMacro>
```

HelpJumpType Element

Description

Allows you to choose how this Topic will be displayed when you jump to it from the Help Contents. You can choose:

- ▶▶ **Display as a Popup:** the Topic will be displayed as a pop-up.
- ▶▶ **Show only as a heading:** no topic will be created in Windows Help, only an entry in the contents is created.
- ▶▶ **Display in the Default Window:** the Topic will be displayed in the window defined in Topic Help Window.
- ▶▶ **Do not show in contents:** a topic is created in the Windows Help, but this topic will not appear in the contents. This can be used for What's This Help topics and other topics that you don't want in the contents.

Execute this Macro: allows you to set a relationship to a Macro Procedure object to be executed. A topic is still created but the Macro may not necessarily display the topic. The HelpJumpType element corresponds to the "In this table of contents" options, on the Display and Contents sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	1 to 5, where: 1 = Popup 2 = Default window 3 = Execute macro 4 = Heading 5 = Do not show

Sample XML

```
<HelpJumpType inherited="true">2</HelpJumpType>
```

HelpJumpWindow Element

Description

Sets a relationship with a Media object that defines the help window that this Topic will be displayed in when it is called from the Help Contents, Index, Jumps, or from any Related Topics pop-up.

The HelpJumpWindow element corresponds to the "Help window" field, on the Display and Contents sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	>= 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<HelpJumpWindow inherited="true">35</HelpJumpWindow>
```

HelpNewSequence Element

Description

Determines if this Topic marks the start of a new browse sequence. Any Topics following this Topic in the contents, with *Include in Browse Sequence* set on, will be included in this browse sequence.

The HelpNewSequence element corresponds to the "Start new browse sequence" field, on the Windows Help tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpNewSequence inherited="true">false</HelpNewSequence>
```

HelpNonScrolling Element

Description

Determines if the Help Heading is placed in the non-scrolling region of the help window.

The HelpNonScrolling element corresponds to the "Non-scrolling" field, on the Linking sub-tab, on the Windows Help tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Boolean	true, false, (don't inherit)

Sample XML

```
<HelpNonScrolling inherited="true">true</HelpNonScrolling>
```

HelpTopicMacro Element

Description

Sets a relationship to a Macro Procedure object that defines the Windows Help Macros that will be executed each time this Topic is opened.

The HelpTopicMacro element corresponds to the "Macro" field, on the Windows Help tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	>= 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<HelpTopicMacro>0</HelpTopicMacro>
```

WebFilename Element

Description

Defines an alternative Filename for the HTML page. If an extension is not specified then the default .htm, or the extension specified in the Media Object is used. If a Filename is not specified, then the Object Code is used. For example, if the code is *1234*, then the filename would be *1234.htm*. If just an extension is specified, then the Object Code is used as the filename with the *specified extension*.

Note: This field is only active if the Start New HTML Page checkbox is selected.

The WebFilename element corresponds to the "Filename" field, on the HTML tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

Attribute Name	Optional	Data Type
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

`<WebFilename>main.jsp</WebFilename>`

WebMedia Element

Description

Sets a relationship to a Media object that defines the HTML page.

Note: This can only be selected when Start New HTML Page is set to on.

The WebMedia element corresponds to the "Media" field, on the HTML tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

`<WebMedia inherited="true">36</WebMedia>`

WebTitle Element

Description

Defines an alternative Title for the HTML page. The information is placed in the <TITLE> tag at publishing time. If a title is not specified, then the HTML Heading is used instead.

Note: This field is only active if the Start New HTML Page checkbox is selected.

The WebTitle element corresponds to the "Page Title" field, on the HTML tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<WebTitle>Introduction</WebTitle>
```

WebTOCImage Element

Description

Allows you to specify an alternative icon to use in the HTML Help Table of Contents. If you are not using an HTML Help Table of Contents in this Book, then this property is ignored.

The WebTOCImage element corresponds to the "TOC image" field, on the HTML tab, of the Topic object.

Attributes

<u>Attribute Name</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Data Type</u>
inherited	Yes	Boolean

Parent Element

Topic

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 10 characters long. Valid values: (auto) 1-42=Images

Sample XML

```
<WebTOCImage inherited="true">(auto)</WebTOCImage>
```

Folders Element



Description

You can organize the items in your Library using customizable Library Folders with associated user security. The folders in the Folders tab of the Library Explorer expand and collapse the same way as the folders in Windows Explorer, so you can see more or less of each folder's contents.

The Folders element corresponds to the "Folders" tab, in the Library Explorer of Author-it.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Author-it

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
Folder	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```

<Folders>
- <Folder>
  <ID>54</ID>
  <Name>Logging</Name>
  <GUID>CA5ABD4F7769405D90653D0247511C5F</GUID>
  <ParentFolderID>150</ParentFolderID>
</Folder>
- <Folder>
  <ID>150</ID>
  <Name>Completed Projects</Name>
  <GUID>D2995FCA8EE6466BA81857BF28CD7397</GUID>
  <ParentFolderID>46</ParentFolderID>
</Folder>
</Folders>

```

Folder Element**Description**

The Folder element is a structural element that represents an Author-it folder. It contains the ID, Name, GUID, and ParentFolderID elements.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Author-it

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
ID	No	Once
Name	No	Once
GUID	No	Once
ParentFolderID	No	Once

Sample XML

```

<Folder>
  <ID>54</ID>
  <Name>Logging</Name>
  <GUID>CA5ABD4F7769405D90653D0247511C5F</GUID>
  <ParentFolderID>150</ParentFolderID>
</Folder>

```

ID Element

Description

The ID element contains the unique ID of the folder.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Folder

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (a Folder ID)

Sample XML

```
<ID>54</ID>
```

Name Element

Description

The Name element contains the Name of the folder.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Folder

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long

Sample XML

```
<Name>Logging</Name>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains the unique GUID of the folder.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Folder

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>CA5ABD4F7769405D90653D0247511C5F</GUID>
```

ParentFolderID Element

Description

The ParentFolderID element contains the ID of the parent folder.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Folder

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (a Folder ID)

Sample XML

```
<ParentFolderID>150</ParentFolderID>
```

ObjectSummarys Element

Description

The ObjectSummarys element contains a list of Author-it objects that are referenced by objects in the XML file, but not included in the file. Commonly these will be File, Media and Style objects.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Author-it

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
ObjectSummary	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<ObjectSummarys>
- <ObjectSummary>
  <ID>1350</ID>
  <Type>File</Type>
  <GUID>07D39C94BCA911D59E960080AD74496A</GUID>
  <Description>Contents Icon</Description>
</ObjectSummary>
- <ObjectSummary>
  <ID>18</ID>
  <Type>Style</Type>
  <GUID>07D397B1BCA911D59E960080AD74496A</GUID>
  <Description>Heading 1</Description>
</ObjectSummary>
- <ObjectSummary>
  <ID>35</ID>
  <Type>Media</Type>
  <GUID>07D397C1BCA911D59E960080AD74496A</GUID>
  <Description>Main</Description>
</ObjectSummary>
</ObjectSummarys>
```

ObjectSummary Element

Description

The ObjectSummary element is a structural element which contains a summary of an Author-it object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

ObjectSummarys

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
ID	No	Once
Type	No	Once
GUID	No	Once
Description	No	Once

Sample XML

```
<ObjectSummary>
  <ID>18</ID>
  <Type>Style</Type>
  <GUID>07D397B1BCA911D59E960080AD74496A</GUID>
  <Description>Heading 1</Description>
</ObjectSummary>
```

ID Element

Description

The ID element contains the ID of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

ObjectSummary

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (an Object ID)

Sample XML

```
<ID>18</ID>
```

Type Element

Description

The Type element contains the type of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

ObjectSummary

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<Type>Style</Type>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains the GUID of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

ObjectSummary

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>07D397B1BCA911D59E960080AD74496A</GUID>
```

Description Element

Description

The Description element contains the description of the object.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

ObjectSummary

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<Description>Heading 1</Description>
```

ReleaseStates Element

Description

The ReleaseStates element contains a list of release states that are used by the main objects in the XML.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Author-it

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
ReleaseState	Yes	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<ReleaseStates>
- <ReleaseState>
  <ID>9</ID>
  <Name>Do Not Publish</Name>
  <GUID>613B7C93F9C6413DA019C221B3D53E5A</GUID>
  <Color>16777215</Color>
  <ReviewColor>33023</ReviewColor>
</ReleaseState>
- <ReleaseState>
  <ID>18</ID>
  <Name>Released</Name>
  <GUID>FF62C71468864748AE4C4AB2C2CCC006</GUID>
  <Color>16777215</Color>
  <ReviewColor>32768</ReviewColor>
</ReleaseState>
- <ReleaseState>
  <ID>1</ID>
  <Name>Draft</Name>
  <GUID>BA24FA3903564ABBAAE8EA6A7B609C159</GUID>
  <Color>16777215</Color>
  <ReviewColor>255</ReviewColor>
</ReleaseState>
</ReleaseStates>
```

ReleaseState Element

Description

The ReleaseState element contains a number of elements which describe a release state.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

ReleaseStates

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
ID	No	Zero to many times
Name	No	Zero to many times
GUID	No	Zero to many times
Color	No	Zero to many times
ReviewColor	No	Zero to many times

Sample XML

```
<ReleaseState>  
  <ID>9</ID>  
  <Name>Do Not Publish</Name>  
  <GUID>613B7C93F9C6413DA019C221B3D53E5A</GUID>  
  <Color>16777215</Color>  
  <ReviewColor>33023</ReviewColor>  
</ReleaseState>
```

ID Element

Description

The ID element contains the ID of the release state.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

ReleaseState

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0 (a Release State ID)

Sample XML

```
<ID>9</ID>
```

Name Element

Description

The Name element contains the name of the release state.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

ReleaseState

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<Name>Do Not Publish</Name>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains the GUID of the release state.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

ReleaseState

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>613B7C93F9C6413DA019C221B3D53E5A</GUID>
```

Color Element

Description

The Color element contains the color of the release state. This color is used to highlight the object in Author-it in the Object List.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

ReleaseState

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	0 to 16777215, where 0 = black 16777215 = white

Sample XML

```
<Color>16777215</Color>
```

ReviewColor Element

Description

The ReviewColor element contains the review color of the release state. The review color is used to highlight the text of the object in the published Word document.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

ReleaseState

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	0 to 16777215, where 0 = black 16777215 = white

Sample XML

```
<ReviewColor>33023</ReviewColor>
```

Information Element

Description

The Information element contains details about the library, or translation job from which the XML was created.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Author-it

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
Description	Yes	Once
Date	Yes	Once
Library	Yes	Once

TranslationJob Yes Once

Sample XML

```
<Information>
  <Description>XML Export</Description>
  <Date>2004-03-01T09:20:30</Date>
- <Library>
  <Name>C:\Program Files\AuthorIT V4\Data\Libraries\sample.adl</Name>
  <GUID>A268019246FA412CAFFEC635DB02CF12</GUID>
  <User>(supervisor)</User>
- <Locale>
  <ID>5129</ID>
  <Description>English (United States)</Description>
</Locale>
</Library>
- <TranslationJob>
  <Description>Notepad All Objects</Description>
  <GUID>430A20CCDE95472086F966A9F038DEEC</GUID>
  <WordCount>1216</WordCount>
</TranslationJob>
</Information>
```

Description Element

Description

The Description element contains text describing the method of creation of the XML file.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Information

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<Description>XML Export</Description>
```

Date Element

Description

The Date element contains the date and time that the XML file was created.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Information

Values

Data Type	Range
DateTime	A valid date and time in universal time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss)

Sample XML

```
<Date>2004-03-01T09:20:30</Date>
```

Library Element

Description

The Library element is a structural element containing a number of elements describing the Author-it Library.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Information

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
Name	No	Once
GUID	No	Once
User	No	Once
Locale	No	Once

Sample XML

```
<Library>
  <Name>C:\Program Files\AuthorIT V4\Data\Libraries\sample.adl</Name>
  <GUID>A268019246FA412CAFFEC635DB02CF12</GUID>
  <User>(supervisor)</User>
- <Locale>
  <ID>5129</ID>
  <Description>English (United States)</Description>
</Locale>
</Library>
```

Name Element**Description**

The Name element contains the name of the Author-it library from which the XML file was created.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Library

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<Name>C:\Program Files\AuthorIT V4\Data\Libraries\sample.adl</Name>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains the GUID of the Author-it library from which the XML file was created.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Library

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>A268019246FA412CAFFEC635DB02CF12</GUID>
```

User Element

Description

The User element contains the name of the user who created the XML file.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Library

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<User>(supervisor)</User>
```

Locale Element

Description

Usually, a country or language that requires the documentation to be translated. However, this could also be variations on the same language such as English (US) and English (UK) or clients that require wildly different versions of the same base library.

The Locale element is a structural element containing elements which describe the localization of the Author-it library from which the XML file was created.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Library

Children

Element	Optional	Occurs
ID	No	Once
Description	No	Once

Sample XML

```
<Locale>
  <ID>5129</ID>
  <Description>English (United States)</Description>
</Locale>
```

ID Element

Description

The ID element contains the ID of the locale of the Author-it library from which the XML file was created.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Locale

Values

Data Type	Range
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<ID>5129</ID>
```

Description Element

Description

The Description element contains the description of the locale of the Author-it library from which the XML file was created.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Locale

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<Description>English (United States)</Description>
```

TranslationJob Element

Description

The TranslationJob element is a structural element containing elements which describe the translation job from which the XML file was created.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

Information

Children

<u>Element</u>	<u>Optional</u>	<u>Occurs</u>
Description	No	Once
GUID	No	Once
WordCount	No	Once

Sample XML

```
<TranslationJob>  
  <Description>Notepad All Objects</Description>  
  <GUID>430A20CCDE95472086F966A9F038DEEC</GUID>  
  <WordCount>1216</WordCount>  
</TranslationJob>
```

Description Element**Description**

The Description element contains the description of the translation job from which the XML file was created.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

TranslationJob

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	0 to 255 characters long.

Sample XML

```
<Description>Notepad All Objects</Description>
```

GUID Element

Description

The GUID element contains the GUID of the translation job from which the XML file was created.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

TranslationJob

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
String	32 characters long. Valid characters are 0-9 and A-F.

Sample XML

```
<GUID>430A20CCDE95472086F966A9F038DEEC</GUID>
```

WordCount Element

Description

The WordCount element contains the word count (the total number of words in the source objects) of the translation job library from which the XML file was created.

Attributes

None

Parent Element

TranslationJob

Values

<u>Data Type</u>	<u>Range</u>
Integer	>= 0

Sample XML

```
<WordCount>1216</WordCount>
```

Index

A

Action Element • 228
AdditionalFile Element • 41, 91, 280
Alignment Element • 334, 354, 487
All Element • 482
Author-it Element • 5
Author-it XML Format • 3

B

BasedOn Element • 10, 52, 106, 129, 160, 195, 215,
236, 299, 397, 425, 444, 468
Book Element • 7
BorderBottom Element • 312
BorderLeft Element • 312
BorderRight Element • 313
BorderShadow Element • 314
BorderStyle Element • 314
BorderTop Element • 315
br Element • 507
Bullet Element • 316

C

ChildNodes Element • 25, 174
Children Element • 488
Color Element • 548
ColumnWidth Element • 488
Content Element • 287
Contents Element • 489
ContentsNodes Element • 23
CreatedBy Element • 11, 53, 107, 130, 161, 195,
215, 237, 300, 397, 426, 445, 468
CreatedDate Element • 11, 53, 107, 130, 161, 196,
216, 237, 300, 398, 426, 445, 469
cs Element • 507

D

Data Element • 528
Date Element • 551

Description Element • 12, 54, 108, 131, 162, 197,
217, 238, 301, 399, 427, 446, 470, 544, 550, 555,
556

E

EmbeddedPicture Element • 65
EmbeddedPictureExt Element • 65
ExcludeHeadingText Element • 490

F

File Element • 47
Filename Element • 42, 92, 281
Folder Element • 538
FolderID Element • 13, 55, 109, 132, 163, 198, 218,
239, 302, 400, 428, 447, 471
Folders Element • 537
FontBold Element • 316
FontColour Element • 317
FontItalics Element • 318
FontName Element • 318
FontSize Element • 319
FontSubscript Element • 320
FontSuperscript Element • 321
FontUnderline Element • 320
fref Element • 508

G

Glossary Element • 103
GUID Element • 13, 55, 109, 132, 163, 198, 218,
239, 302, 400, 428, 447, 471, 540, 544, 548, 553,
557

H

Heading Element • 490
HeadingFile Element • 491
Headings Element • 481
HeadingStyle Element • 492
HelpActions Element • 228
HelpAlias Element • 523
HelpAltPrefix Element • 34
HelpAutoSize Element • 265

- HelpBack Element • 266
- HelpBitmapAlignment Element • 80
- HelpBorderBottom Element • 336
- HelpBorderLeft Element • 337
- HelpBorderRight Element • 337
- HelpBorderShadow Element • 338
- HelpBorderStyle Element • 339
- HelpBorderTop Element • 339
- HelpBrowse Element • 267
- HelpBullet Element • 340
- HelpCitation Element • 35
- HelpColourHeading Element • 267
- HelpColourTopic Element • 268
- HelpCompression Element • 36
- HelpContents Element • 269
- HelpContextID Element • 524
- HelpContextString Element • 525
- HelpCopyright Element • 36
- HelpCustomFootnotes Element • 526
- HelpEntryText Element • 210
- HelpFileName Element • 37, 80
- HelpFind Element • 269
- HelpFolder Element • 81
- HelpFontBold Element • 341
- HelpFontColour Element • 341
- HelpFontItalics Element • 342
- HelpFontName Element • 343
- HelpFontSize Element • 343
- HelpFootnote Element • 527
- HelpFromEntries Element • 180
- HelpFromHeadings Element • 182
- HelpFromLinks Element • 181
- HelpHeading Element • 483
- HelpHeadingStyle Element • 528
- HelpHeight Element • 270
- HelpIncludeButton element • 150
- HelpIncludeFile Element • 38
- HelpIncludeInSequence Element • 529
- HelpIndex Element • 271
- HelpJumpMacro Element • 530
- HelpJumpType Element • 151, 531
- HelpJumpWindow Element • 532
- HelpKeepOnTop Element • 271
- HelpLeft Element • 272
- HelpMacro Element • 38, 211, 273
- HelpMaximise Element • 273
- HelpMultiBookTargets Element • 414
- HelpNewSequence Element • 532
- HelpNonScrolling Element • 533
- HelpNonWrapping Element • 344
- HelpNumber Element • 345
- HelpNumbering Element • 346
- HelpNumberStart Element • 347
- HelpOptions Element • 274
- HelpOutputFormat Element • 82
- HelpParaAfter Element • 347
- HelpParaAlignment Element • 348
- HelpParaBefore Element • 349
- HelpParaFirstLine Element • 349
- HelpParagraphStyle Element • 83
- HelpParaLeft Element • 350
- HelpParaLineSpacing Element • 351
- HelpParaRight Element • 351
- HelpPopUpColor Element • 121
- HelpPopUpType Element • 122
- HelpPrintTopic Element • 275
- HelpRemoveUnderline Element • 151
- HelpScaleHeight Element • 83
- HelpScaleWidth Element • 84
- HelpSizeHeight Element • 85
- HelpSizeWidth Element • 85
- HelpSizingMethod Element • 86
- HelpSourceType Element • 87
- HelpTabDefault Element • 352
- HelpTabs Element • 353
- HelpTitle Element • 39, 123, 275, 415
- HelpTop Element • 276
- HelpTopicMacro Element • 534
- HelpTopics Element • 277
- HelpVideoPlay Element • 88
- HelpVideoRepeat Element • 88
- HelpVideoShowMenuButton Element • 89

HelpVideoShowPlaybar Element • 90

HelpWidth Element • 277

HelpWindow Element • 152, 416

HelpWindowName Element • 278

href Element • 509

Hyperlink Element • 125

HyperLink Element • 66

HyperLinksTargets Element • 142

I

ID Element • 14, 28, 56, 110, 133, 164, 199, 219, 240, 303, 401, 429, 448, 472, 517, 539, 543, 547, 554

IncludelnHelp Element • 14, 56, 110, 133, 164, 199, 219, 240, 303, 401, 429, 448, 472, 492

IncludelnPrint Element • 15, 57, 111, 134, 165, 200, 220, 241, 304, 402, 430, 449, 473, 493

IncludelnWeb Element • 16, 58, 112, 135, 166, 201, 221, 242, 305, 403, 431, 450, 474, 493

Index Element • 157, 494

IndexEntry Element • 192

IndexNodes Element • 173

Information Element • 549

IsTemplate Element • 17, 59, 113, 136, 167, 202, 222, 243, 306, 404, 432, 451, 475

ItemStyle Element • 495

K

Key Element • 18, 60, 114, 137, 168, 203, 223, 244, 307, 405, 433, 452, 476

L

Library Element • 551

Locale Element • 554

LocalizationID Element • 18, 60, 114, 137, 168, 203, 223, 244, 307, 405, 433, 452, 476

M

Macro Element • 212

Media Element • 230

MetaDataItem Element • 286

ModifiedBy Element • 19, 61, 115, 138, 169, 204, 224, 245, 308, 406, 434, 453, 477

mref Element • 510

N

Name Element • 28, 229, 286, 518, 539, 547, 552

nbd Element • 511

nbs Element • 512

NextTopic Element • 496

Node Element • 24, 173

Number Element • 322

Numbering Element • 323

NumberStart Element • 324

O

Object Element • 9, 51, 105, 128, 159, 193, 213, 235, 298, 395, 424, 443, 466

Objects Element • 6

ObjectSummary Element • 542

ObjectSummarys Element • 541

OutlineLevel Element • 324

P

p Element • 504

ParaAfter Element • 325

ParaAlignment Element • 326

ParaBefore Element • 326

ParaFirstLine Element • 327

ParaLeft Element • 328

ParaLineSpacing Element • 328

Parameters Element • 230

ParaRight Element • 329

ParentFolderID Element • 540

ParentTopic Element • 496

PopUp Element • 497

Position Element • 335, 355, 498

PreviousTopic Element • 499

PrintAddLetterHeadings Element • 119

PrintAddSuperHeadings Element • 410

PrintAutoNumber Element • 520

PrintBorderBottom Element • 67

PrintBorderLeft Element • 68

PrintBorderRight Element • 69

PrintBorderTop Element • 70

PrintBreakType Element • 521

PrintByLine Element • 30

- PrintCaption Element • 438
 - PrintCaptionLabel Element • 71
 - PrintCaptionPosition Element • 71
 - PrintCaptionTitle Element • 72
 - PrintCrossRefBrackets Element • 144
 - PrintCrossRefIncludeHeading Element • 144
 - PrintCrossRefIncludePageNum Element • 145
 - PrintCrossRefPageNumText Element • 146
 - PrintCrossRefText Element • 146
 - PrintDifferentFirst Element • 249
 - PrintDifferentOddEven Element • 249
 - PrintEntryText Element • 209
 - PrintEvenFooter element • 250
 - PrintEvenHeader Element • 251
 - PrintFile Element • 457
 - PrintFilename Element • 73
 - PrintFirstFooter element • 251
 - PrintFirstHeader Element • 252
 - PrintFolder Element • 73
 - PrintFootnoteCustomRef Element • 147
 - PrintFootnoteNumberFormat Element • 148
 - PrintFootnoteNumberType Element • 148
 - PrintFromEntries Element • 175
 - PrintFromHeadings Element • 176
 - PrintFromLinks Element • 177
 - PrintHeading Element • 482
 - PrintHeadingStyle Element • 521
 - PrintIncludeByLine Element • 457
 - PrintIncludeSubTitle Element • 458
 - PrintIncludeSuperTitle Element • 459
 - PrintIncludeTitle Element • 459
 - PrintIncludeVersion Element • 460
 - PrintIndexType Element • 177
 - PrintLabelType Element • 438
 - PrintLinkType Element • 149
 - PrintMarginBottom Element • 253
 - PrintMarginFooter Element • 253
 - PrintMarginGutter Element • 254
 - PrintMarginHeader Element • 255
 - PrintMarginLeft Element • 255
 - PrintMarginRight Element • 256
 - PrintMarginTop Element • 257
 - PrintMedia Element • 119, 178, 410, 439, 461, 522
 - PrintMirrorMargins Element • 257
 - PrintNumColumns Element • 258
 - PrintOddFooter element • 259
 - PrintOddHeader Element • 259
 - PrintOrientation Element • 260
 - PrintOutputFormat Element • 74
 - PrintPageNumber Element • 411, 440
 - PrintPageNumberFormat Element • 261
 - PrintPageNumberStartFrom Element • 261
 - PrintPageNumberStartType Element • 262
 - PrintPaperSize Element • 263
 - PrintParagraphStyle Element • 75
 - PrintRightAlign Element • 179, 412, 440
 - PrintScaleHeight Element • 75
 - PrintScaleWidth Element • 76
 - PrintSectionStart Element • 263
 - PrintShowLevel Element • 412
 - PrintSizeHeight Element • 77, 264
 - PrintSizeWidth Element • 77, 265
 - PrintSizingMethod Element • 78
 - PrintSortTerms Element • 120
 - PrintSourceType Element • 79
 - PrintStyleName Element • 335
 - PrintSubTitle Element • 32
 - PrintSuperHeading Element • 523
 - PrintSuperTitle Element • 32
 - PrintTitle Element • 31, 121, 179, 413, 441
 - PrintVersion Element • 33
 - PrintWordTemplate Element • 34
- R**
- RelatedGroup Element • 485
 - RelatedGroupID Element • 499
 - RelatedGroups Element • 484
 - Relation Element • 143, 183, 184, 208, 209, 414, 415, 502
 - ReleaseState Element • 546
 - ReleaseStateID Element • 20, 62, 116, 139, 170, 205, 225, 246, 309, 407, 435, 454, 478
 - ReleaseStates Element • 545

ReviewColor Element • 549

S

Sequence Element • 500

Siblings Element • 500

SpecificLinks Element • 501

Status Element • 21, 63, 117, 140, 171, 206, 226, 247, 310, 408, 436, 455, 479

Style Element • 30, 290, 519

StyleName Element • 330

StyleType Element • 330

T

Tab Element • 333, 353

TabDefault Element • 331

table Element • 512

TableOfContents Element • 393

TableOfFigures Element • 422

Tabs Element • 332

Targets Element • 183, 208

td Element • 514

Text Element • 503

TitlePage Element • 441

Topic Element • 461

tr Element • 513

TranslationJob Element • 555

tref Element • 508

Type Element • 22, 64, 118, 141, 172, 207, 227, 248, 311, 409, 437, 456, 480, 527, 543

U

User Element • 553

V

Value Element • 29, 518

ValueObject Element • 29, 519

VariableAssignment Element • 27, 516

VariableAssignments Element • 26, 515

Version Element • 22, 64, 118, 141, 172, 207, 227, 248, 311, 409, 437, 456, 480

W

WebAdditionalFiles Element • 40, 90, 279

WebAlignment Element • 92

WebALinkColour Element • 279

WebAltText Element • 93

WebBackAttach Element • 355

WebBackColour Element • 281, 356

WebBackImage Element • 282

WebBackImageNonScrolling Element • 283

WebBackPositionX Element • 357

WebBackPositionY Element • 357

WebBackRepeat Element • 358

WebBackSound Element • 283

WebBackSoundRepeat Element • 284

WebBackURL Element • 359

WebBaseFontSize Element • 42

WebBaseURL Element • 43

WebBlockTag Element • 369

WebBorder Element • 94

WebBorderColourBottom Element • 359

WebBorderColourLeft Element • 360

WebBorderColourRight Element • 361

WebBorderColourTop Element • 361

WebBorderStyleBottom Element • 362

WebBorderStyleLeft Element • 363

WebBorderStyleRight Element • 364

WebBorderStyleTop Element • 365

WebBorderWidthBottom Element • 366

WebBorderWidthLeft Element • 366

WebBorderWidthRight Element • 367

WebBorderWidthTop Element • 368

WebBulletStyle Element • 370

WebBulletURL Element • 370

WebByLine Element • 44

WebClear Element • 371

WebContentsType Element • 416

WebEntryText element • 211

WebFilename Element • 534

WebFloat Element • 372

WebFolder Element • 94

WebFontColour Element • 372

WebFontName Element • 373

WebFontSize Element • 374

WebFontStyle Element • 375

WebFontVariant Element • 375

WebFontWeight Element • 376
WebFramesetTemplate Element • 44
WebFrameType Element • 417
WebFrameWidth Element • 418
WebFromEntries Element • 185
WebFromHeadings Element • 186
WebFromLinks Element • 187
WebHeading Element • 483
WebHeight Element • 377
WebHHIndexTemplate Element • 187
WebHHPopupFontName Element • 153
WebHHPopupFontSize Element • 153
WebHHPopupMarginsLR Element • 154
WebHHPopupMarginsTB Element • 155
WebHHSitemapTemplate Element • 188, 419
WebHHTocTemplate Element • 419
WebHorizontalSpace Element • 95
WebImageMap Element • 96
WebIndexType Element • 188
WebJHIndexTemplate Element • 189
WebJHTocTemplate Element • 420
WebJumpType element • 155
WebJumpURLs Element • 156
WebLetterSpacing Element • 377
WebLineHeight Element • 378
WebLinkColour Element • 287
WebLinkType Element • 123
WebMarginBottom Element • 379
WebMarginLeft Element • 379
WebMarginRight Element • 380
WebMarginTop Element • 381
WebMedia Element • 124, 190, 421, 535
WebMetaData Element • 285
WebNumbering Element • 382
WebNumberStyle Element • 383
WebOHIndexTemplate Element • 191
WebOHTocTemplate Element • 421
WebOutputFormat Element • 96
WebPaddingBottom Element • 383
WebPaddingLeft Element • 384
WebPaddingRight Element • 385
WebPaddingTop Element • 385
WebSizeHeight Element • 97
WebSizeWidth Element • 98
WebSourceType Element • 99
WebSuperTitle Element • 45
WebTemplate Element • 288
WebTextAlign Element • 386
WebTextColour Element • 289
WebTextDecoration Element • 387
WebTextIndent Element • 387
WebTextTag Element • 388
WebTextTransform Element • 389
WebTitle Element • 46, 125, 191, 289, 422, 536
WebTOCImage Element • 536
WebVersion Element • 46
WebVerticalAlign Element • 390
WebVerticalSpace Element • 100
WebVideoRepeat Element • 100
WebVideoRepeatTimes Element • 101
WebVideoShowControls Element • 102
WebVideoStart Element • 102
WebVLinkColour Element • 290
WebWhiteSpace Element • 391
WebWidth Element • 392
WebWordSpacing Element • 393
WordCount Element • 557